

THE  
R U D I M E N T S  
O F T H E

Latin Tongue :

O R A  
*Plain and Easy Introduction*  
T O

Latin Grammar.

Wherein

The PRINCIPLES of the LANGUAGE  
are Methodically digested both in EN-  
GLISH and LATIN.

W I T H

*Useful NOTES and Observations, explain-  
ing the TERMS of GRAMMAR, and  
further improving its RULES.*

---

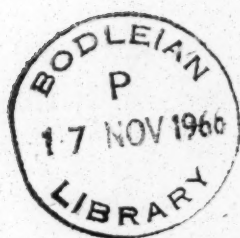
By THO. RUDDIMAN, M. A.

---

**The Sixth Edition Corrected.**

---

L O N D O N, Printed, and sold by J. CLARKE in  
Duck-Lane; A. MILLAR, at Buchanan's Head, over-  
against St. Clement's Church, in the Strand; F. CO-  
GAN, at the Middle Temple-Gate, Fleet Street; and  
S. PALMER and J. HUGGONSON, Printers, in  
Bartholomew-Close. 1730.



P



comm  
Ways  
posed  
ly in  
teach  
in th  
are o  
false  
ing M  
Sollic  
the C





T H E

# P R E F A C E.

**A**MONG the several Instructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue commonly taught in our Schools are many Ways insufficient in Respect to the End proposed by them; that the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is designed to teach; That the other is defective, particularly in the *Syntax*; and that the *Rules* of both are often obscure and intricate, and sometimes false and erroneous. Whereupon some knowing Masters of that Profession, by their repeated Sollicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the Compiling of a new *Rudiments*, which

A 2 they

they conceived might in a great Measure be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and so contrived to bring down its *Rules* to the Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make them enter with more Ease and Familiarity into his Mind. This is the End I have had in View With what Success it has been prosecuted, is a Province for others not me to determine. However, if any thing inclines me to hope its Acceptance in the World, it is owing to the kind Assistance I have had from time to time of the above mentioned and other Gentlemen, as the Duty of their respective Employments would permit them. What discouraged me most in this Undertaking, was the different Opinions of *Grammarians*, with the sharp Contests and Disputes they have had about the Method of *Instruction*, and the most proper Way to communicate the *Latin* Tongue to others with the greatest Facility and Expedition. It would be almost an endless Task to reckon up the various *Schemes* that have been projected for that Purpose: Therefore I shall engage no farther in this Subject, than as it seems necessary to give my Reader a clear and distinct View of the Reasons that determined me to the Method I have followed.

I have long observed that those of our Country, whose Business is to direct the Studies of Youth,

free Youth, are greatly divided about what an *Introduction* to *Latin Grammar* ought properly to contain, and in what Language its Precepts should be conveyed. Some are for contracting it into as narrow Limits as is possible, and not to burthen the Memory of the Learner with any thing but what is essential and absolutely necessary: While others contend that this is too general, and not sufficient to direct his Practice, without the Addition of more particular Rules. Again, tho' the greater Part incline to have the first *Principles of Grammar* communicated in a known Language, there are not a few, and of these some Persons of Distinction, who are still for retaining them in *Latin*, which, tho' attended at first with more Difficulty, makes (in their Judgment) a more lasting Impression on the Mind, and carries the Learner more directly to the Habit of speaking *Latin*, a Practice much to be used in our Schools. It appeared next to an impossibility, to satisfy so many different Opinions: However, the Method I have taken seems to bid fairest for it. For I have reduced the *Substance* of these *Rudiments* into a sort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin* an *English* Version, leaving the Master to his own Choice and Discretion which to use. And that none may complain that the *Text* is too compendious, I have subjoined large *Notes*, which I humbly conceive will supply that Defect.

To

To render my Design of more general Use, I was oblig'd to fall in with this Expedient, which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby swelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wished, or some perhaps will excuse; tho' the Reasons are so obvious that it is needless to relate them. I confess I have been larger in the *Notes* than the Nature of a *Rudiments* seem'd to require: But, as I presume there is nothing in them but what may be useful either to Master or Scholar, and since it was never my Intention that they should be all taught, or any of them, with the same Care as the *Essential Parts*, I thought they might the more easily be dispensed with. There is one thing more which has considerably increased them, *viz.* the *Remarks* I have added on *English Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs*; which I judg'd useful on a double Account: *First*, As they serve to illustrate *Latin Grammar*, the first Notions and Impressions whereof we receive from the Language we our selves speak. *Secondly*, Because the greater Number of those who are taught the *Latin Tongue* reap little other Benefit from it, than as it enables them to speak and write *English* with the greater Exactness, I suppos'd it would not be amiss to throw in something in order to that End.

Having



Having thus given a general *Plan* of my Undertaking, all I shall say of the particular Management of it, is, that I have laboured all along to render every thing as plain and easy as I possibly could, considering with a tender Regard for whose Benefit it is designed. I have consulted the best *Grammarians* both Ancient and Modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpose; tho' not contenting my self with their bare Authority, I frequently had Recourse to the Fountain itself, I mean the purest Writers of the *Latin* Tongue. As thus I have been solicitous to avoid *Error*, so I have been cautious not to incur the Censure of having affected *Novelty*, and therêfore have receded no farther from the common *Systems*, than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the usual *Terms* of *Art*, which have so long obtained in the Schools, tho' sometimes I have taken the Liberty, as I saw Occasion for it, to explain them my own Way. That I might lay no more Weight on the Memories of Children than they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as small a Number as the Subject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was consistent with Perspicuity; leaving it to the Industry of the Teacher



Teacher to explain them more fully, as he shall find necessary, without which no *Rules* can be sufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wished; but I frankly own that I do not see how it can be made much shorter, without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules*. However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have subjoined a more *Compendious Syntax*, consisting only of a few *Fundamental Rules*, which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Discretion of the Master shall direct him.

H E

Q  
Di  
ginti  
i, j, k  
t, u, v  
M.  
D.  
nantes  
M.

D.

he  
ules  
ng-  
wn  
uch  
der,  
ver,  
, I  
ax,  
les,  
o-  
the



THE  
R U D I M E N T S  
OF THE  
Latin Tongue:  
OR,  
*A Plain and easy Introduction*  
TO  
LATIN GRAMMAR.

PARS PRIMA.

*De Literis & Syllabis.*

*Magister.*

**Q**UOT sunt Literæ apud Latinos?

*Discipulus.* Quinque & viginti; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

*M.* Quomodo dividuntur?

*D.* In Vocales & Consonantes.

*M.* Quot sunt Vocales?

*D.* Sex; a, e, i, o, u, y.

PART FIRST.

*Of Letters and Syllables.*

*Master.*

**H**OW many Letters are there among the Latins?

*Scholar.* Five and Twenty; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

*M.* How are they divided?

*S.* Into Vowels and Consonants.

*M.* How many Vowels are there?

*S.* Six; a, e, i, o, u, y.

A

*M.* Quot

## 2 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue. Part I.

M. Quot sunt Consonantes?

D. Novemdecim; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. Quot sunt Diphthongi?

D. Quinque; *ae, [vel æ,] oe, [vel œ] au, eu, ei: ut, aetas, vel ætas, poena, vel pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

M. How many Consonants are there?

S. Nineteen; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. How many Diphthongs are there?

S. Five; *ae, [or æ] oe, [or œ] au, eu, ei; as, aetas, or ætas, poena, or pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

### NOTES.

GRAMMAR is the Art of speaking any Language rightly, as *Hebrew, Greek, Latin, English, &c.*

*Latin Grammar* is the Art of speaking rightly the *Latin Tongue*.

The **RUDIMENTS** of that Grammar are plain and easy Instructions, teaching Beginners the first Principles, or the most common and necessary Rules of *Latin*.

The *Rudiments* may be reduced to these four Heads. I. Treating of *Letters*. II. Of *Syllables*. III. Of *Words*. IV. Of *Sentences*.

These are naturally made up one of another: for one or more Letters make a Syllable; one or more Syllables make a Word; and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A *Letter* is a Mark or Character representing an uncompounded Sound.

*K, Y, Z* are only to be found in Words originally *Greek*, and *H* by some is not accounted a Letter, but a Breathing.

We reckon the *J* called *Jod* [or *Je*] and the *V* called *Van*, two Letters distinct from *I* and *U*, because not only their Figures, but their Powers or Sounds are quite different; *J* sounding like *G* before *E*, and *V* almost like *F*.

A *Vowel* is a Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by it self.

A *Consonant* is a Letter that cannot sound without a *Vowel*.

A *Syllable* is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a *Vowel*: and any of the six Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Consonants before or utter it, make a Syllable.

There are for the most Part as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it. Only there are two Kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwise, viz.

When *U* with any other Vowel comes after *G, Q* or *S*, as in *Lingua, Qui, Suadeo*; where the Sound of the *U* vanishes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong, or double Vowel.

A *Diphthong* is a Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, so as both of them are heard.

Of *Diphthongs* three are *Proper*, viz. *au, æu, ei*, in which both Vowels are heard: and two *Improper*; viz. *a, œ*, in which the *a* and *œ* are not heard, but they are pronounced as *e* simple.

Some, not without Reason, to these five Diphthongs add other three; as, *ai* in *Misia*, *oi* in *Troia*, *yi* or *ni* in *Harpyia* or *Harpyia*,

## PARS SECUNDA. PART SECOND.

## De Dictionibus.

M. **Q**uot sunt Partes Oracionis?

D. Octo: *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium; Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot sunt Declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.*

M. Quot sunt Indeclinabiles?

D. Item Quatuor; *Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

## Of Words.

M. **H**ow many Parts of Speech are there?

S. Eight: Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

M: How are they divided?

S. Into Declinable and Indeclinable.

M. How many are Declinable?

S. Four; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.

M. How many are Indeclinable?

S. Likewise Four; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A **WORD** [*Vox* or *dictio*] is one or more Syllables joined together, which Men have agreed, upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight *Classes*, called *Parts of Speech*: but some comprise them all under three Classes, viz. *Noun, Verb, and Adverb*. Under *Noun* they comprehend also *Pronoun* and *Participle*; and under *Adverb*, also *Preposition, Interjection* and *Conjunction*. Others to these add a fourth *Class*, viz. *Adnoun*, comprehending *Adjectives* under it, and restricting *Noun* to *Substantives* only. These by some are otherwise called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations* and *Particles*.

The Declinable Parts of Speech are so called, because there is some Change made upon them, especially in their last Syllables: and this is what we call *Declension*, or *Declining* of Words. But the indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the same.

The last Syllable, on which these Changes do fall, is called the *Ending* or *Termination* of Words.

These Changes are made by what Grammarians call *Accidentia*, i.e. *The Accidents* of Words.

These *Accidents* are commonly reckoned Six, viz. *Gender, Case, Number; Mood, Tense, and Person*. Of these, *Gender* and *Case* are peculiar to three of the Declinable Parts of Speech, viz. *Noun, Pronoun* and *Participle*; and *Mood, Tense* and *Person* are peculiar to one of them, viz. *Verb*: and *Number* is common to them all.

**NOTE 1.** That *Person* may also be said to belong to *Noun* or *Pronoun*: but then it is not properly an *Accident*, because no Change is made by it in the Word.



NOTE 2. That *Figure, Species* and *Comparison*, which some call *Accidents*, do not properly come under that Name, because the Words have a different Signification from what they had before. See Chap. IX.

NOTE 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun and Participle, are in a stricter Sense called *Declension* or *Declination* of them; and the Changes that happen to a Verb are called *Conjugation*.

## CAP. I.

## De Nomine.

M. Q Uomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Casus & Numeros.

M. Quot sunt Genera?

D. Tria; Masculinum, Femininum & Neutrum.

M. Quot sunt Casus?

D. Sex; Nominativus, Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus, Vocativus & Ablativus.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

D. Duo; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt Declinationes?

D. Quinque; Prima, Secunda, Tertia, Quarta, & Quinta.

## REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent Nominativum, Accusativum & Vocativum similes in utroque Numero: & hi Casus in Plurali semper desinunt in a.

2. Vocativus in Singulari

## CHAP. I.

## Of Noun.

M. H Ow is a Noun declined?

S. By Genders, Cases and Numbers.

M. How many Genders are there?

S. Three; Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

M. How many Cases are there?

S. Six; Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative and Ablative.

M. How many Numbers are there?

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Declensions are there?

S. Five; First, Second, Third, Fourth and Fifth.

## GENERAL RULES.

1. Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative alike in both Numbers: And these Cases in the Plural end always in a.

2. The Vocative for the most plerum-



plerumque, in Plurali semper, est similis Nominativo.

3. Dativus & Ablativus Pluralis sunt similes.

4. Nomina propria plerumque carent Plurali.

part in the Singular, [and] always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.

3. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.

4. Proper Names for the most part want the Plural.

A **NOUN** is that Part of Speech which signifies the Name or Quality of a Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; *Bonus*, good.

A **Noun** is either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

A **Substantive Noun** is That which signifies the Name of a Thing; as, *Arbor*, a Tree; *Virtus*, Virtue; *Bonitas*, Goodness.

An **Adjective Noun** is that which signifies an Accident, Quality or Property of a Thing; as, *Albus*, white; *Felix*, happy; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Substantive may be distinguished from an Adjective these two Ways.

1. A Substantive can stand in a Sentence without an Adjective; but an Adjective cannot without a Substantive: as, I can say, *A Stone falls*; but I cannot say, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective it will make Sense; but if it be joined with a Substantive it will make Nonsense: Thus we say, *A good Thing*, *a white Thing*; but we do not say, *A Man Thing*, *A Beast Thing*.

A Substantive Noun is divided into *Proper* and *Appellative*.

A **Proper Substantive** is That which agrees to one particular Thing of a Kind; as, *Virgilius*, a Man's Name; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name; *Scotia* Scotland; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh; *Taus*, the Tay.

An **Appellative Substantive** is That which is common to a whole Kind of Things; as, *Vir*, a Man; *Femina*, a Woman; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Urbs*, a City; *Fluvius*, a River.

**NOTE**, That when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes an Appellative; as, *Duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

**GENDER** in a natural Sense is the Distinction of Sex, or the Difference between Male and Female: but in a Grammatical Sense we commonly understand by it The Fitness that a **Substantive Noun** hath to be joined to an **Adjective** of such a Termination, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of Animals the *Hees* are of the Masculine, and the *Shees* of the Feminine Gender: but of Things without Life, and where the Diversity of Sex is not considered, even of Things that have Life, some are of the Masculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to the Use of the best Authors of the Latin Tongue.

Besides these three principal Genders, there are reckoned also other three less Principal, which are nothing else but Compounds of the three former, viz. The Gender *Common to two*, the Gender *Common to three*, and the *Doubtful* Gender.

1. The **Common Gender**, or Gender common to two [*Genus commune*, or *Commune duum*] is Masculine and Feminine, and belongs to such Nouns as agree to both Sexes; as, *Parens*, a Father or Mother; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

II. The **Gender common to three** [*Genus commune trium*] is Masculine, Feminine and Neuter, and belongs only to Adjectives: whereof some have three Terminations, the first Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neu-

## Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

ter; as, *Bonus, bona, bonum*, good. Some have two, the first Masculine and Feminine, and the second Neuter; as, *Mollis, molle, fott.* And some have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three Genders; as, *Prudens*, wife.

III. The *Doubtful Gender* [*Genus dubium*] belongs to such Nouns as are found in good Authors sometimes in one Gender, and sometimes in another; as, *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. *Vulgus*, the Rabble, Masc. or Neut.

[We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the Epicene or Promiscuous Gender; for properly speaking there is no such gender distinct from the three chief ones, or the Doubtful. There are indeed Epicene Nouns, that is, some Names of Animals in which the Distinction of Sex is either not at all, or very obscurely considered; and these are generally of the Gender of their Termination; as, *Aquila*, an Eagle, Femin. because it ends in *a*; *Passer*, a Sparrow, Mascul. because it ends in *er*. (see pag. 8 and 11) So *Homo*, A Man or Woman, Mascul. *Mancipium*, a Slave, Neut. *Anguis*, a Serpent, Doubtful.]

To distinguish these Genders we make use of these three Words, *Hic, hæc, hoc*, which are commonly, tho' improperly, called *Articles*. *Hic* is the Sign of the Masc. *hæc* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neut. Gender; *hic* & *hæc* of the Common to two; *hic, hæc, hoc* of the Common to three; *hic aut hæc; hic aut hoc, &c.* of the Doubtful.

By *CASES* we understand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining: so called from *cado*, to fall, because they naturally fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Casus rectus*, the straight Case; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The Singular *NUMBER* denotes one single Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; the *Plural* denotes more Things than one; as, *Homines*, Men.

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the Declension of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

### The Declension of English Nouns.

I. The English Language hath the two *Genders* of Nature, *viz.* Masculine and Feminine; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE*, according to the Difference of their Sex: and almost every Thing without Life is called *IT*. But, because all the Adjectives of this Language are of one Termination, it has no Occasion for any other Genders.

II. The English, properly speaking, has no *Cases*, because there is no Alteration made in the Words themselves, as in the Latin; but instead thereof we use some little Words called *PARTICLES*.

Thus, The *Nominative Case* is the simple Noun it self: The Particle *OF* put before it, or *'s* after it, makes the *Genitive*: *TO* or *FOR* before it makes the *Dative*: The *Accusative* is the same with the *Nominative*: The *Vocative* hath *O* before it: And the *Ablative* hath *WITH, FROM, IN, BY, &c.*

NOTE 1. That when a Substantive comes before a Verb, it is called the *Nominative*; when it follows after a Verb *Active*, without a Preposition intervening, it is called the *Accusative*.

NOTE 2. That the Apostrophus or Sign [*'*] is not used in the *Genitive Plural*; as, *Mens Works, the Apostles Creed.*

NOTE 3. That *TO* the Sign of the *Dative*, and *O* of the *Vocative*, are frequently omitted or understood.

Besides

Besides these there are other two little Words called *ARTICLES* which are commonly put before Substantive Nouns, viz. *A* [or *An* before a Vowel or *H*] called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite*.

*A* or *AN* signifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as, *A Man*, that is, *one Man*. *The* is a Pronoun, and signifies almost the same with *This* or *That*, and *These* or *Those*.

NOTE 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms; and Appellatives, when used in a very general Sense, have none of these Articles; as, *Man is mortal*, i. e. every Man; *God abhors Sin*, i. e. all Sins: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, &c. frequently have *The*; as, *The Thames*, *The Britannia*, *The Alps*.

NOTE 2. That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plural wants the Indefinite.

NOTE 3. That, when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the Article is put before both; as, *A good Man*, *The good Man*: and the Definite is put before the Adjective, when the Substantive is understood; as, *The just shall live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Man*.

III. The English hath two Numbers as the Latin; and the Plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the Singular: as, *Book*, *Books*.

Exc. 1. Such as end in *ch*, *sh*, and *x*; which have *es* added to their Singular; as, *Church-es*, *Brush-es*, *Witness-es*, *Box-es*. Where 'tis to be noticed, that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural, than in the Singular Number. Which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce*, *ge*, *se*, *xe*; as, *Faces*, *Ages*, *Houses*, *Mazes*. The Reason of this proceeds from the near Approach these Terminations have in their Sound to an *s*, so that their Plural could not be distinguished from the Sing. without the Addition of another Syllable. And for the same Reason Verbs of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their 3d Person Sing. of the present Tense.

Exc. 2. Words that end in *f* or *fe*, have their Plural in *ves*; as, *Calf*, *Calves*; *Leaf*, *Leaves*; *Wife*, *Wives*: but not always, for *Hoof*, *Roof*, *Grief*, *Mischief*, *Dwarf*, *Strife*, *Muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *Staves*.

Exc. 3. Some have their Plural in *en*; *Man*, *Men*; *Woman*, *Women*; *Child*, *Children*; *Chick*, *Chickens*; *Brother*, *Brothers* or *Brethren*; (which last is seldom used but in Sermons, or in a Burlesque Sense.)

Exc. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *Die*, *Dice*; *Mouse*, *Mice*; *Louse*, *Lice*; *Goose*, *Geese*; *Foot*, *Feet*; *Tooth*, *Teeth*; *Penny*, *Pence*; *Sow*, *Sows* and *Swine*; *Cow*, *Cows* and *Kine*.

Exc. 5. Some are the same in both Numbers; as, *Sheep*, *Hose*, *Swine*, *Chicken*, *Pease*, *Deer*; *Fish* and *Fishes*, *Mile* and *Miles*, *Horse* and *Horses*.

NOTE, That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather *ies* than *ys* in the Plural; as, *Cherry*, *Cherries*.

An English Noun is thus declin'd,

A, The			The		
Singular.	Nom.	<i>King,</i>	Plural.	Nom.	<i>Kings</i>
	Gen. of	<i>King,</i>		Ger. of	<i>Kings</i>
	Dat. to [for]	<i>King,</i>		Dat. to [for]	<i>Kings</i>
	Acc.	<i>King,</i>		Acc.	<i>Kings</i>
	Voc. O	<i>King,</i>		Voc. O	<i>Kings</i>
	Abl. with, from, in, by	<i>King,</i>		Abl. with, from, in, by	<i>Kings</i>

Prima

# Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

## Prima Declinatio.

M. **Q**Uomodo dignoscitur Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum singularem in æ diphthongon.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Quatuor; a, e, as, es:

## The first Declension.

M. **H**ow is the first Declension known?

S. By the Genitive and Dative singular in æ Diphthong.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. Four; a, e, as, es: As,

*Penna, Penelope, Æneas, Anchises.*

*Penna, a Pen, Fem.*

Terminations.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. penna,	a pen.	Nom. pennæ,	pens.	a, æ,
Gen. pennæ,	of a pen.	Gen. pennarum,	of pens.	æ, arum,
Dat. pennæ,	to a pen.	Dat. pennis,	to pens.	æ, is,
Acc. pennam,	a pen.	Acc. pennas,	pens.	am, as,
Voc. penna,	O pen.	Voc. pennæ,	O pens.	a, æ,
Abl. penna, with a pen.		Abl. pennis, with pens.		a, is.

¶ After the same Manner you may decline *Litera*, a Letter; *Via*, a Way; *Galea*, an Helmet; *Tunica*, a Coat; *Toga*, a Gown.

*A* is a Latin Termination; *e*, *as* and *es* are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Masculine.

**RULE.** *Filia*, a Daughter; *Nata*, a Daughter; *Dea*, a Goddess; *Anima*, the soul, with some others, have more frequently *abus* than *is* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur. to distinguish them from Masculines in *us* of the second Declension.

¶ In declining Greek Nouns observe the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* [and *a*] have sometimes their Accusative [with the *os*] in *an*; as, *Æneas*, *Æneam* vel *Ænean*; [*Osfa*, *Ossam*, vel *Ossan*.]
2. Those in *es* have their Accusative in *en*, and their Vocative and Ablative in *e*: As,

Nom. Anchises,

Voc. Anchise,

Accus. Anchisen,

Ablat. Anchise.

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive in *es*, their Accusat. in *en*, their Dative, Vocative and Ablative in *e*: As,

Nom. Penelope,

Dat. Penelope,

Voc. Penelope,

Abl. Penelope.

Gen. Penelopes,

Acc. Penelopen,

As to the Dative of Words in *e*, I have followed Probus and Priscian among the Antients; Lilly, Alvarus, Vossius, Messieurs de Port Royal, Johnston, &c. among the Moderns. And tho' none of them cite any Example, yet I remember to have observed three such Datives, viz. *Cybele* in Virg. *Æn.* XI. 768. *Penelope* in Martial, *Epig.* XI. 8. 5. and *Epigone* in Reinesii Syntag. Inscrip.

Class



Class 14. Numb. 85. But Diomedes and Despauter seem to be of Opinion, that these Nouns have *æ* in their Dat. The Reason that moved the former is, because they thought it incongruous, that seeing Nouns in *e* generally follow the Greek in all their other Cases, they should follow the Latin in their Dative only, especially since their Ablative, which answers to the Greek Dative, ends in *e*. As, on the contrary, they maintain, that if such Nouns have *æ* in their Dative, it must come from a Nominative in *a*: of which there are some Examples yet extant: and then they may likewise have their Accusative in *am*, as, Penelopam, Circam in Plautus, Lycambam in Terentianus Maurus. Thus Helenæ or Helenes, Helenam or Helenen, are frequently to be met with in Poets; who also turn such Words as commonly end in *a*, into *e* in the Nominative and Vocative, when the Measure of their Verse requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek Words in *es* have sometimes their Nominative and Vocative in *a*, (whence comes their Genitive and Dative in *æ*;) and if Mr. Johnson's Citations are right, both *es* and *e* have sometimes the Accusative in *em*.]

Secunda Declinatio.

The Second Declension.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur Secunda Declinatio?

M, **H**ow is the Second Declension known?

D. Per Genitivum singularem in *i*, & Dativum in *o*.

S. By the Genitive singular in *i*, and the Dative in *o*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

M. How many Terminations hath it?

D. Septem; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on; ut,*

S. Seven; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on: As,*

*Gener*, a Son-in-law; *Vir*, a Man; *Satur*, full; *Dominus*, a Lord; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Synodos*, a Synod; *Albion*, the Island Albion, or Great Britain.

*Gener, a Son-in-law, Masc.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur</i>	Terminations.
<i>Nom. gener,</i>	<i>Nom. generi,</i>	<i>er, ir, us, i,</i>
<i>Gen. generi,</i>	<i>Gen. generorum,</i>	<i>i, orum,</i>
<i>Dat. genero,</i>	<i>Dat. generis,</i>	<i>o, is,</i>
<i>Acc. generum,</i>	<i>Acc. generos,</i>	<i>um, os,</i>
<i>Voc. gener,</i>	<i>Voc. generi,</i>	<i>er, ir, e, i,</i>
<i>Abl. genero:</i>	<i>Abl. -generis.</i>	<i>o: is.</i>

After the same Manner you may decline *Puer*, a Boy; *Socer*, a Father-in-law; *Vir*, a Man, &c. But *Liber*, a Book; *Magister*, a Master; *Alexander*, a Man's Name; and most other Substantives in *er*, lose the *e* before *r*; Thus, *Sing. Nom. Liber, Gen. libri, Dat. libro, Acc. librum, Voc. liber, Abl. libro. Plur. Nom. libri, Gen. librorum, &c.*

Domi-



# Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Dominus, a Lord, Masc.

Sing.	Plur.	Thus,
Nom. dominus,	Nom. domini,	Ventus, the Wind.
Gen. domini	Gen. dominorum,	Oculus, the Eye.
Dat. domino.	Dat. dominis,	Fluvius, the River.
Acc. dominum,	Acc. dominos,	Puteus, a Well.
Voc. domine,	Voc. domini,	Focus, a common Fire.
Abl. domino :	Abl. dominis.	Rogus, a Funeral Pile.

Regnum, a Kingdom, Neut.

Sing.	Plur.	Thus,
Nom. regnum,	Nom. regna,	Templum, a Church.
Gen. regni,	Gen. regnorum,	Ingenium, a Wit.
Dat. regno,	Dat. regnis,	Horreum, a Barn.
Acc. regnum,	Acc. regna,	Canticum, a Song.
Voc. regnum,	Voc. regna,	Jugum, a Yoke.
Abl. regno :	Abl. regnis.	

## REGULÆ.

## RULES.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>I. Nominativus in <i>us</i> facit Vocativum in <i>e</i>; ut, <i>Ventus</i>, <i>vente</i>.</p> <p>II. Propria in <i>ius</i> perdunt <i>us</i> in Vocativo; ut, <i>Georgius</i>, <i>Georgi</i>.</p> | <p>I. The Nominative in <i>us</i> makes the Vocative in <i>e</i>; as, <i>Ventus</i>, <i>vente</i>.</p> <p>II. Proper Names in <i>ius</i> lose <i>us</i> in the Vocative; as, <i>Georgius</i>, <i>Georgi</i>.</p> |
|--|--|

*Filius* also hath *fili*, and *Deus* hath *Deus*, in the Vocative; and in the Plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diis*, than *Dei* and *Deis*.

The most common Terminations of the Second Declension are *er* and *us* of the Masc. and *um* of the Neuter Gender.

There is only one Noun of this Declension, viz. *Vir*, a Man, with its Compounds, *Levir*, *Dumvir*, *Triumvir*, &c. and only one in *us*, viz. *Satur*, full, (of old *Saturus*) an Adjective. *Os* and *on*, are Greek Terminations, and generally changed into *us* and *um* in their Nominative.

These, with other Greek Nouns in *us*, have sometimes their Accusative in *on*. [We have excluded the Termination *eus* from this Declension, as belonging more properly to the Third; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, *Orphei*, *Orphea*, *Orpheu*; For when it is of the second Declension, it is *e-us* of two Syllables, and so falls under the Termination *us*: *Orphe-us*, *Orphe-i* (contracted *Orphei* and *Orphi*) *Orphe-o*, *Orphe-um*, [or *Orphe-on*] *Orphe-o*.]

## Tertia Declinatio.

## The Third Declension.

M. Q Uomodo dignoscitur Tertia Declinatio?

M. H Ow is the Third Declension known?  
D. Per

# Part II. Chap. I. of Noun.

11

D. Per Genitivum singula-  
rem in *is*, & Dativum in *i*.

M. Quot habet Terminati-  
ones, seu syllabas finales?

D. Septuaginta & unam.

M. Quot habet literas fina-  
les?

D. Undecim: *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*: ut,

*Diadema*, a Crown; *Sedile*, a Seat; *Sermo*, Speech; *Lac*, Milk; *David*, a Man's Name; *Animal*, a living Creature; *Pecten*, a Comb; *Pater*, a Father; *Rupes*, a Rock; *Caput*, the Head; *Rex*, a King.

*Sermo*, Speech, Masc.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. sermo,	Nom. sermones,
Gen. sermonis,	Gen. sermonum,
Dat. sermoni,	Dat. sermonibus,
Acc. sermonem,	Acc. sermones,
Voc. sermo,	Voc. sermones,
Abl. fermone:	Abl. sermonibus.

Terminations.

<i>a, e, o, &amp;c. es, a,</i>
<i>is um, ium,</i>
<i>i, ibus,</i>
<i>em, es, a,</i>
<i>a, e, o, &amp;c. es, a,</i>
<i>e, i, ibus.</i>

*Sedile*, a Seat, Neut.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. fedile,	Nom. fedilia,
Gen. fedilis,	Gen. fedilium,
Dat. fedili,	Dat. fedilibus,
Acc. fedile,	Acc. fedilia,
Voc. fedile,	Voc. fedilia,
Abl. fedili:	Abl. fedilibus,

As *Sermo*, so most Substantives of this Declension in *a, o, c, d, n, r, x, ei*, or *ur, as, os, us*; (except their Accus. and Voc. when they are Neuters, or when they want the Plural Number.) Also (when they have more Syllables in their Gen. than Nom.) all Words in *es*, and most of these in *is*.

Of the final Letters of the third Declension Six are peculiar to it, *o, c, d, l, t, x*, the other Five are common to other Declensions, viz. *a, e, n, r, s*.

The copious final Letters are, *o, n, r, s, x*.

The copious final Syllables are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, ns, rs, ex*.

All Nouns in *a* of this Declension are originally Greek, and have always *m* before it. There are only two Words in *c*; *Lac*, Milk; and *Halec*, a Her- ring. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very rare. There are only three Words in *t*, viz. *Caput*, the Head; *Sinciput*, the Forehead; *Occiput* the hind-head.

1. The Terminations *er, or, os, o, n*,

2. The Terminations *io, do, go, as, es, is, ys, ans, x*, and *s* after a Consonant.

3. The Terminations *a, e, c, l, men, ar, ur, ns, nt*:

but from these there are many Exceptions.

are { Masculine  
Feminine  
Neuter.

NOTA

NOTE 1. That for the most part the Genitive hath a Syllable more than the Nominative; and where it is otherwise they generally end in *e*, *es*, or *is*.

NOTE 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the Genitive, must run through the other Cases; (except the Acculative and Vocative sing. of Neuters) as. *Thema*, -atis, -ati, -ate, a Theme; *Sanguis*, -guinis, Blood; *Iter*, -ineris, a Journey; *Carmen*, -minis, a Verse; *Judex*, -dicis, a Judge,

## REGULÆ.

1. Nomina in *e*, & Neutra in *al* & *ar* habent *i* in Ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantum in Ablativo faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *i* tantum, vel *e* aut *i* simul, faciunt *ium*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo singulari habent *a* in Nominativo, Accusativo & Vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia*.

## RULES.

1. Nouns in *e*, and Neuters in *al* and *ar*, have *i* in the Ablative.

2. These which have *e* only in the Ablative make their Genitive plural in *um*.

3. These which have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make *ium*.

4. Neuters which have *e* in their Ablative sing. have *a* in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative plural.

5. But these which have *i* in the Ablative. make *ia*.

## 1. EXCEPTIONS in the Accusative Singular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accusative; as, *Vis*, *vim*, Strength; *Tussis*, the Cough; *Sitis*, Thirst; *Baris*, the Beam of a Plough; *Ravis*, Hoariness; *Amussis* a Mason's Rule. To which add Names of Rivers in *is*; as, *Tybris*, *Thamesis*; which the Poets sometimes make in *in*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im*; as *Navis*, a Ship; *Poppis*, the Stern; *Securis*, an Ax; *Clavis*, a Key; *Febris*, a Fever; *Pelvis*, a Basin; *Reffis*, a Rope; *Torris*, a Tower; *Navem* vel *navim*, &c.

## 2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative Singular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accusative have *i* in the Ablative; as, *Vis*, *vim*, *vi*, &c. These that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i*; as, *Navis*, *navem*, vel *navim*, *nave* vel *navi*.

2. *Canalis*, *Vestis*, *Bipennis*, have *i*: *Avis*, *Amnis*, *Ignis*, *Unguis*, *Jus* and *Imber*, with some others, have *e* or *i*; but most commonly *e*.

3. These Neuters in *ar* have *e*, *Far*, *Jubar*, *Nectar*, and *Hepar*: *Sal* also has *Sale*.

## 3. EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive Plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as*, *is*, and *s* with a Consonant before it, have *ium*; as, *As*, *assium*; *Lis*, *litium*; *Urbs*, *urbium*.

2. Also Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in their Genitive; as, *Vallis*, *vallium*; *Rupes*, *rupium*: except *Panis*, *Canis*, *Vates* and *Volucris*.

3. To which add *Caro*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Mus*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Linter*, *Sal*, *Os*, *offis*.

NOTE. That when the Genitive Plural ends in *ium*, the Accusative frequently instead of *es* has *eis* or *is*; as, *omneis*, *parteis*, or *omnis*, *partis*, for *omnes*, *partes*.

Of Greek Nouns.

I. Greek Nouns have sometimes their Genitive in *os*. And these are, 1. Such as increase their Genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas*, *Arcadis* vel *Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Briseis*, *-cidis*, vel *-eidos*, a Woman's Name. 2. Such as increase in *os* pure, i.e. with a Vowel before it; as, *Hæresis*, *-eos* vel *-ios*, an Heresy. 3. To these add *Sphingos*, *Strymonos* and *Panos*.

NOTE, That *is* is more frequent, except in the second Kind, and Patrony: micks of the first.

II. 1. Greek Words which increase their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (i.e. with a Consonant before it) have frequently their Accusative sing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as *Lampas*, *lampadis*, *lampada* *lampadas*; also, *Minos*, *minois*, *minoa*; *Tros*, *trois*, *troa*, *troas*; *Heros*, *herois*, *heroa*, *heroas*. 2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whose Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accusative in *im*, or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Hæresis*, *-eos*, *hæresim* or *-in*, *Chelys*, *-lyos*, a Lute, *chelym* or *-lyn*. 3. Of Words in *is*, which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, Masculines have their Accusative for the most part in *im* or *in*, seldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of; as, *Paris*, *parim*, vel *parin*, vel *paridem*; Feminines, have most commonly *dem* or *da*, and seldom *im* or *in*; as, *Briseis*, *briseidem* vel *briseida*.

III. Feminines in *e* have *us* in their Genitive, and *e* in their other Cases; as, *Dido*, *didus*, *dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form *Didonis*, *didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as, *Calchas*, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Tiphys*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, *Achille*, *Pari*, *Tiphy*, *Orphen*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and sometimes *on* in their Genitive plural; as, *Epigrammatôn*, *Hæreseôn*) and very rarely *im*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have most frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plur. as, *Poema*, *poematis*, because or old they said *poematum*, *-ti*. *Bos* has *bovm*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singularem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Duas; *us* & *u*: ut,

*Fructus*, *Fruit*; *Cornu*, *an Horn*.

The Fourth Declension.

M. **H**ow is the Fourth Declension known?

S. By the Genitive singular in *us*, and the Dative in *ui*.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. Two; *us* and *u*: as,

*Fructus*, *Fruit*, *Mas*.

Terminations.

Sing.	Nom. <i>fructus</i> ,	Plur.	Nom. <i>fructus</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
	Gen. <i>fructus</i> ,		Gen. <i>fructuum</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>uum</i> ,
	Dat. <i>fructui</i> ,		Dat. <i>fructibus</i> ,	<i>ui</i> ,	<i>ibus</i> ,
	Acc. <i>fructum</i> ,		Acc. <i>fructus</i> ,	<i>um</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
	Voc. <i>fructus</i> ,		Voc. <i>fructus</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
	Abl. <i>fructu</i> :		Abl. <i>fructibus</i> .	<i>u</i> ;	<i>ibus</i> .

C

*Cornu*



# Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Cornu, an Horn, Neut.

Sing.	Nom. cornu,	Plur.	Nom. cornua,	As Fructus, so Vul-
	Gen. cornu,		Gen. cornuum,	
	Dat. cornu,		Dat. cornibus	
	Acc. cornu,		Acc. cornua,	
	Voc. cornu,		Voc. cornua,	
	Abl. cornu:		Abl. cornibus.	

tus, the Countenance; Ma-  
nus, the Hand, Fem. Casus  
a Fall or Chance.

As Cornu, so Genu, the  
Knee; Veru, a Spit; To-  
nicru, Thunder.

Nouns in *us* of this Declension are generally Masculine, and these in *u* all Neuter, and indeclinable in the singular Number.

RULE. Some Nouns have *ubus* in their Dative and Ablative plural, viz. *arcus*, a Bow; *artus*, a Joint; *lacus*, a Lake; *acus*, a Needle; *portus*, a Port or Harbour; *partus*, a Birth; *tribus*, a Tribe; *veru*, a Spit.

NOTE, That of old Nouns of this Declension belonged to the Third, and were declined as *Grus, gruis*, a Crane; thus *Fructus, fructus, fructui, fructu-um, fructu;* *Fructus, fructuum, fructibus, fructines, fructues, fructibus*. So that all the Cases are contracted except the Dative sing. and Genitive plur. There are some Examples of the Genitive in *uis* yet extant; as on the contrary there are several of the Dative in *u*.

The blessed Name JE-  
sus is thus declined.

Domus, an House, Fem. is thus declined.

Sing.	Nom. IESU,	Plur. wanting.	Nom. domus,	Sing.	Nom. domus,	Plur.	Nom. domus,
	Gen. IESU,		Gen. domus, v. mi.		Gen. domorum, v. uum.		Gen. domorum, v. uum.
	Dat. IESU,		Dat. domui, v. mo.		Dat. domibus,		Dat. domibus,
	Acc. IESUM,		Acc. domum,		Acc. domos, v. us.		Acc. domos, v. us.
	Voc. IESU,		Voc. domus,		Voc. domus,		Voc. domus,
	Abl. IESU.		Abl. domo:		Abl. domibus.		Abl. domibus.

[NOTE, That the Genitive domi is only used when it signifies, At home domo, the Dative, is found in Horace, Epist. 1. 10. 13.]

## Quinta Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoscitur  
Quinta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singularem  
& Dativum in *ei*.

M. Quot habet Terminatio-  
nes?

D. Unam, nempe *es*: ut,  
Res, a Thing, Fem.

Sing.	Nom. res,	Plur.	Nom. res,
	Gen. rei,		Gen. rerum,
	Dat. rei,		Dat. rebus,
	Acc. rem,		Acc. res,
	Voc. res,		Voc. res,
	Abl. re:		Abl. rebus.

## The Fifth Declension.

M. HOw is the Fifth De-  
clension known?

S. By the Genitive and Da-  
tive singular in *ei*.

M. How many Terminatio-  
bath it?

S. One, namely *es*: as,  
Terminations.

<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>ei</i> ,	<i>erum</i> ,
<i>ei</i> ,	<i>ebus</i> ,
<i>em</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>e</i> :	<i>ebus</i> .

Nouns



Nouns of the Fifth Declension are not above fifty, and are all Feminine except *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Masc.

All Nouns of this Declension end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith; *Spes*, Hope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except these four, *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *Aries*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall, and *Quies*, Rest; which are of the Third.

Most Nouns of this Declension want the Genitive, Dative and Ablative plural; and many of them want the Plural altogether.

*General Remarks on all the Declensions.*

1. The Genitive plural of the first Four is sometimes contracted, especially by Poets; as, *Calicolum*, *Donum*, *Mensum*, *Currum*; for *Calicolarum*, *Deorum*, *Mensum*, *Currum*.

2. When the Genitive of the second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by Poets; as, *Tuguri* for *Tugarii*. We read also *Aulæi* for *aulein* the First, and *Fidei* for *fidei* in the Fifth; and so of other like Words.

*Declinatio Adjectivorum.*

**A**djectiva sunt vel primæ & secundæ Declinationis, vel tertiæ tantum.

Omnia Adjectiva habentia tres Terminationes (præter (a) undecim) sunt primæ & secundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminationes habent, sunt tertiæ.

Adjectiva primæ & secundæ habent Masculinum in *us*, (b) vel *er*; Fœmininum semper in *a*, Neutrum semper in *um*: ut,

*Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good; *Tener*, *tenera*, *tenerum*, tender.

*Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good.

The Declension of Adjectives.

**A**djectives are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third only.

All Adjectives having three Terminations (except eleven) are of the First and Second: But these which have one or two Terminations are of the Third.

Adjectives of the First and Second, have their Masculine in *us*, or *er*; their Feminine always in *a*, and their Neuter always in *um*: as,

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Nom.* bon-us, -a, -um,  
*Gen.* bon-i, -æ, -i,  
*Dat.* bon-o, -æ, -o,  
*Acc.* bon-um, -am, -um,  
*Voc.* bon-e, -a, -um,  
*Abl.* bon-o, -a, -o:

*Nom.* bon-i, -æ, -a,  
*Gen.* bon-orum, -arum, -orum,  
*Dat.* bon-is, -is, -is,  
*Acc.* bon-os, -as, -a,  
*Voc.* bon-i, -æ, -a,  
*Abl.* bon-is, -is, -is,

(a) Viz, *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *celeber*, *saluber*, *volucer*, *campester*, *equester*, *pescifer*, *palmifer*, *silvester*; which are of the Third, and have their Masc. in *er* or *is*, their Fem. in *is*, and Neut. in *e*.

(b) For *satur*, full, was of old *saturus*.

# Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.

Sing.

Plur.

N. te-ner,	-era,	-erum,	N. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
G. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-eri,	G. ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	A. ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	V. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-era,	-ero :	A. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three Substantives of the same Terminations and Declensions: As in the Examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *tener*, like *ger*; *bona* and *tenera*, like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Therefore the Antients, as is clear from *Varro lib. 3. de Anal.* declined every Gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first, especially if the Boy is of a slow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser*, -*era*, -*erum*, wretched; *liber*, -*era*, -*erum*, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *fer*. Others lose it; as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, fair; *niger*, -*gra*, -*gram*, black.

These following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *nullus*, any; *nihilus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether; with its Compounds, *uterque*, both; *uterlibet*, *uterus*, which of the two you please; *alteruter*, the one or the other; have their Genitive singular in *ius*, and Dative in *i*.

Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis.

Adjectives of the Third Declension?

1. Unius Terminationis.

1. Of one Termination.

Felix, happy.

Sing.

Plur.

N. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	A. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice vel -ici, &c.			A. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

2. Duarum Terminationum.

2. Of two Terminations.

Mitis, mite, meek.

Sing.

Plur.

N. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	N. mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	G. mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	D. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitem,	mite,	A. mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	V. mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti:	A. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

Mitior,

Mitior, mitius, meeker.

Sing.

N. miti-or, -or, -us,  
 G. miti-oris, -oris, -oris,  
 D. miti-ori, -ori, -ori,  
 A. miti-orem, -orem, -us,  
 V. miti-or, -or, -us,  
 A. miti-ore vel -ori, &c.

Plur.

N. miti-ores, -ores, -ora,  
 G. miti-orum, -orum, -orum,  
 D. miti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus,  
 A. miti-ores, -ores, -ora,  
 V. miti-ores, -ores, -ora,  
 A. miti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus.

## 3. Trium Terminationum.

## 3. Of three Terminations.

Acer vel acris, acris, acre, sharp.

Sing.

N. a-cer vel cris, -cris, -cre,  
 G. a-cris, -cris, -cris,  
 D. a-cri, -cri, -cri,  
 A. a-crem, -crem, -cre,  
 V. a-cer vel cris, -cris, -cre,  
 A. a cri, -cri, -cri :

Plur.

N. a cres, -cres, -cria,  
 G. a-crium, -crium, -crium,  
 D. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus,  
 A. a cres, -cres, -cria,  
 V. a-cres, -cres, -cria,  
 A. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus.

## REGULÆ.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis habent *e* vel *i* in Ablativo singulari.

2. At si neutrum sit in *e*, Ablativus habet *i* tantum.

3. Genitivus pluralis definit in *ium*; & Neutrum Nominativi, Accusativi & Vocativi in *ia*.

4. Excipe Comparativa, quæ *um* & *a*-postulant.

## RULES.

1. Adjectives of the Third Declension have *c* or *i* in the Ablative singular.

2. But if the Neuter be in *e*, the Ablative has *i* only.

3. The Genitive plural ends in *ium*; and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative in *ia*.

4. Except Comparatives, which require *um* and *a*.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. Dives, Hospes, Sospes, Superstes, Juvenis, Senex and Pauper have *e* in the Ablat. Sing. and consequently *um* in the Genit. Plur.

2. Compos, Impes, Consors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener and Puber; also Compounds ending in *ceps*, *sex*, *pes* and *corpor*; as, Princeps, Artifex, Bipes, Tricorpo, have *um* not *ium*.

NOTE, That all these have seldom the Neuter Si g. and never almost the Neut. Plur. in the Nom. and Accus. To which add Memor, which has *memori*, and *memorum*, and Eocuples, which has *locupletium*; also, Deses, Reses, Hebes, Perpes, Præpes, Teres, Coucolor, Versicolor; which being hardly to be met with in the Genit. Plur. 'tis a Doubt whether they should have *um* or *ium*; tho' I incline most to the former.

3. *Par* has *pari*; *vetus*, *vetera* and *veterum*; *Plus* (which hath only the Neut. in the Sing.) has *plura*, and *plures*, *plura* (or *pluvia*) *plurimum*.

NOTE, 1. That Comparatives, and Adjectives in *us*, have more frequently *e* than *i*, and Participles in the Ablatives call'd Absolute have always *e*; as, *Carolo regnante*, not *regnanti*.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter hardly ever have *e*, but *i*; as, *Vidrici ferro*, not *vidrice*.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives when they are put Substantively have always *e*; as, *Affinis*, *Familiaris*, *Rivalis*, *Sodalis*, &c. So *Par*, a Match; as, *Cum pare quaque suo coeunt*. Ovid.

## OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. THE Ordinal and Multiplicative Numbers (see Chap. IX.) are regularly declined. The Distributive wants the Singular, as also doth the Cardinal, except *Unus*, which is declined as in Pag. 16. and hath the Plural, when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing. as, *Una litera*, one Letter; *Una menia*, one Wall; or when several Particulars are considered complexly as making one Compound; as, *Uni sex dies*, i. e. One Space of Six Days; *Una vestimenta*, i. e. One Suit of Apparel. *Plant*.

*Duo* and *Tres* are declined after this Manner.

Plur.	Nom. duo,	duo,	duo,	I in.	Nom. tres,	tres,	tria,
	Gen. duorum,	duarum,	duorum,		Gen. trium,	trium,	trium,
	Dat. duobus,	duabus,	duobus,		Dat. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
	Acc. duos vel. o,	duas,	duo,		Acc. tres,	tres,	tria,
	Voc. duo,	duæ,	duo,		Voc. tres,	tres,	tria,
	Abl. duobus,	duabus,	duobus,		Abl. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

1. *Ambo*, Both, is declined as *Duo*.

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille*, they are declined thus, *Ducenti*, *ducenta*, *ducenta*; *ducentorum*, *ducentarum*, *ducentorum*, &c.

4. As to *Mille*, *Varro*, and all the Grammarians after him down to the last Age, make it (when it is put before a Genitive plural) a Substantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plur. declin'd, *Millia*, *millium*, *millibus*; but when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make it an Adjective plural indeclinable. But *Scioppius*, and after him *Gronovius* contend, that *Mille* is always an Adjective Plural; and under that Termination of all Cases and Genders; but that it hath two Neuters, *hec Mille* and *hec Millia*: That the first is used, when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. And that, where it seems to be a Substantive governing a Genit. *Multitudo*, *Numerus*, *Manus*, *Pecunia*, *Pondus*, *Spatium*, *Corpus*, or the like, are understood. I own that formerly I was of this Sentiment; but now the weighty Reasons adduced by the most accurate *Perizonius*, incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may not be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive and Adjective declin'd together; which will both make him more ready in the Declensions; and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. Let the Examples at first be of the same Terminations and Declension; as, *Dominus justus*, a just Lord; *Penna bona*, a good Pen; *Ingenium eximium*, an excellent Wit; Afterwards let them be different in one or both; as, *Puer probus*, a good Boy; *Lesio facilis*, an easy Lesson; *Poeta optimus*, an excellent Poet; *Fructus dulcis*, sweet Fruit; *Dies faustus*, a happy Day, &c. And if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write them either in the School, or at home, to be revised by the Master next Day.



OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

These (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme.

# IRREGULAR NOUNS are,

## 1. Defective,

### 1. Substantives,

#### Wanting.

1. Number,
2. Cases.

or having only

### 2. Adjectives.

#### Wanting.

1. Gender,
2. Number.
3. Case,

or having the ----

{ Sing. as, *Liberi, Mina, Arma.*  
Plur. as, *Aer, Hamus, Ævum.*

{ Nom. Voc. as, *Ditionis.*  
Gen. as, *Chaos.*  
Dat. as, *Plus.*  
Voc. as, *Ego.*

{ Sing. as, *Mel.*  
Gen. Dat. & Abl. Plur. as, *Mel.*  
Three; as, *Dica, dicam, dicas.*  
Two; as, *Suppetia, Suppetias.*  
One; as, *Dicis, inficias, noctu.*

{ Masc. as, *Catera, ceterum.*  
Fem. as, *Quisquis, quicquid.*  
Neut. as, *Compos.*  
Masc. Fem. as, *Plus.*  
Masc. Neut. as, *Sicelis.*  
Fem. Neut. as, *Tros.*

{ Plur. as, *Unusquisque.*  
Sing. as, *Centum.*

{ Voc. as, *Nullus.*  
Dat. Abl. as, *Tantundem.*  
Voc. only; as, *Masse, masti.*

## 2. Variable,

### 1. Too much.

In Gender, having Sing.

{ Masc.  
Masc.  
Fem.  
Neut.  
Neut.  
Neut.

Plur.

In Declension being of the

### 2. Too little, as Indeclinables.

{ Neut. as, *Manalus, Menale.*  
Masc. Neut. as, *Locus, -ei & -ca.*  
Neut. as, *Carbasus, Carbasa.*  
Masc. as, *Calum, cali.*  
Fem. as, *Epulum, epula.* [na.  
Masc. Neut. as, *Frenum, ni &*

{ 2. & 1. as, *Delicium, delicie.*  
2. & 4. as, *Laurus, -ri, & -rus*  
3. & 2. as, *Vas, -fis; sa, -orum*

{ altogether; as, *Fas.*  
in the Sing. as, *Cornu.*

## Redundant,

In Termination ----

In Gender ----

In Declension

{ only; as, *Helena, Helene.*  
& Gender; as, *Tignus, tignum.*  
& Decl. as, *Materia, materies.*  
Gend. & Decl. as, *Æther, æthra.*

{ only; as, *hic & hoc Vulgus.*

{ only; as, *Fames, famis*, of the 3d,  
Abl. *fame* of the 5th, because the last  
Syllable is always long with the Poets

Sing. as, *Liberi, Mina, Arma.*  
Plur. as, *Aer, Humus, Aevum.*

Nom. Voc. } as } *Ditionis.*  
Gen. } } *Chaos.*  
Dat. } } *Plus.*  
Voc. } } *Ego.*

Gen. Dat. & Abl. Plur. as, *Mel.*  
Three; as, *Dica, dicam, dicas.*  
Two; as, *Suppetia, Suppetias.*  
One; as, *Dicis, inficias, noctu.*

Masc. as, *Catera, ceterum.*  
Fem. as, *Quisquis, quicquid.*  
Neut. as, *Compos.*

Masc. Fem. as, *Plus.*  
Masc. Neut. as, *Sicelis.*  
Fem. Neut. as, *Tros.*

Plur. as, *Unusquisque.*  
Sing. as, *Centum.*

Voc. as, *Nullus.*  
Dat. Abl. as, *Tantundem.*  
Voc. only; as, *Maste, masti.*

Neut. as, *Manalus, Menale.*  
Masc. Neut. as, *Locus, -i & -ca.*  
Neut. as, *Carbasus, Carbasa.*  
Masc. as, *Cælum, cæli.*  
Fem. as, *Epulum, epula.* [na.  
Masc. Neut. as, *Frenum, ni &*

2. & 1. as, *Delicium, delicia.*  
2. & 4. as, *Laurus, -ri, & -rus*  
3. & 2. as, *Vas, -sis; sa, -orum*  
altogether; as, *Fas.*  
in the Sing. as, *Cornu.*

only; as, *Helena, Helene.*  
& Gender; as, *Tignus, tignum.*  
& Decl. as, *Materia, materies.*  
Gend. & Decl. as, *Æther, æthra.*

only; as, *hic & hoc Vultus.*  
only; as, *Fames, famis,* of the 3d,  
Abl. same of the 5th, because the last  
Syllable is always long with the Poets

NOTE, 1. That the Defective Nouns are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE,

NOTE, 2. That these which *vary too little* may be ranked under the *Defective*; and these which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*. E. G. *Cali, calerum* comes not from *calum*, but from *calus*; and *Vasa, vasorum* not from *vas, vasis*; but from *vasum, vasi*: But Custom, which alone gives Laws to all Languages, has dropt the Singular, and retain'd the Plural; and so of others.

### De Comparatione.

M. **Q**uot sunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Positivus, Comparativus & Superlativus*.

M. Quotæ Declinationis sunt hi gradus?

D. Positivus est Adjectivum Primæ & Secundæ Declinationis, vel Tertiæ tantum; Comparativus est semper Tertiæ; Superlativus semper Primæ & Secundæ.

M. Unde formatur Comparativus gradus?

D. A proximo casu Positivi in *i*, addendo pro masculino & fœminino syllabam *or*, & *us* pro neutro: ut,

*Doctus*, learned, Gen. *docti, doctior*, and *doctius*, more learned: *Mitis*, meek, Dat. *miti, mitior* and *mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur Superlativus?

D. 1. Si Positivus desinat in *r*, Superlativus formatur addendo *rimus*: Ut,

*Pulcher*, fair, *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *Pauper*, poor, *pauperimus*, most poor.

2. Si positivus non desinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur à proximo casu in *i*, addendo *issimus*: Ut,

### Of Comparifon.

M. **H**ow many Degrees of Comparifon are there?

S. Three; the Positive, Comparative and Superlative.

M. Of what Declension are these Degrees?

S. The Positive is an Adjective of the First and Second Declension, or Third only: the Comparative is always of the Third; the Superlative always of the First and Second.

M. Whence is the Comparative Degree formed?

S. From the next Case of the Positive in *i*, by adding for the Masculine and Feminine the Syllable *or*, and *us* for the Neuter; as,

M. Whence is the Superlative formed?

S. 1. If the Positive ends in *er*, the Superlative is formed by adding *rimus*: As,

2. If the Positive ends not in *er*, the Superlative is formed from the next Case in *i*, by adding *issimus*: As,

Gen-

Gen. *Docti, doctissimus*, most learned; Dat. *Miti, mitissimus*, most meek.

By Gramatical COMPARISON we understand Three Adjective Nouns, of which the two last are formed from the first, and import Comparison with it, that is, Heightening or Lessening of its Signification.

Consequently these Adjectives only which are capable of having their Signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the Quality of a Thing simply and absolutely; as, *Durus*, hard; *Parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that Quality; as, *Durior*, harder; *Minor*, less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high, or very low Degree; as, *Durissimus*, hardest, or most hard; *Minimus*, very little, or least.

The Positive hath various Terminations; the Comparative ends always in *or* and *us*; the Superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *min*.

[† The Positive properly speaking is no Degree of Comparison, for it does not compare Things together: However it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon, and formed from, it.]

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *er* added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The SIGN of the Superlative is the Syllable *est* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *most* put before it.

NOTE, That when the Positive is a long Word, or would otherwise sound harsh by having *er* or *est* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative by the Word *more*, and the Superlative by *most* or *very*, put before it.

And for the like Reason the Latin Comparative is sometimes made by *Magis*, and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime*, put before the Positive. And these are particularly used, when the Positive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it; as, *Pius*, godly; *Ardus*, high; *Idoneus*, fit; tho' not always.

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. Bonus,	melior,	optimus:	Good,	better,	best.
Malus,	pejor,	pestimus:	Evil,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maximus:	Great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus:	Little,	less,	least.

Multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum, plus, plurimum: much, more, most.

2. Facilis, easy; Humilis, low; Similis, like; make their Superlative by changing *is* into *issimus*; thus, *facillimus*, *humillimus*, *simillimus*.

3. *Exter*, outward; *Citer*, hither; *Superus*, above; *Inferus*, below; *Posterus*, behind; have regular Comparatives: But their Superlatives are, *extremus* (or *extimus*) uttermost; *citimus*, hithermost; *supremus* (or *summus*) uppermost, highest, last; *infimus* (or *imus*) lowest; *pestremus* (or *posthumus*) latest or last.

4. Compounds in *Dicus*, *Loquus*, *Ficus* and *Volus*, have *entior* and *entissimus*; as, *Maledicus*, one that raileth; *Magniloquus*, one that boasteth; *Beneficus*, Beneficent; *Malevolus*, Malevolent: But these seem rather to come from Participles, or Nouns in *ens*. Besides, the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio* are very rare; and Terence has *Mirificissimus*, and Plinius has *Mendaciloquius*.

5. *Prior*, former, has *Primus*, first; *Uterior*, farther, *Ultimus*, farthest or last; *Propior*, nearer, *Proximus*, nearest, or next; *Ocior*, swifter, *ocissimus*, swiftest; their

Positives being out of Use, or quite wanting. *Proximus* has also another Comparative formed from it, *viz.* *Proximior*.

6. There are also a great many other Adjectives capable of having their Signification increased, which yet want one or more of these Degrees of Comparison; as, *Albus*, white, without Compar. and Superl. *Ingens*, great, *Ingentior*, greater, without the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacerrimus*, most holy, without the Comp. *Anterior*, former, without Posit. and Superl.

¶ These three Degrees of Comparison, being nothing else but three distinct Adjectives, may be declined either severally each by it self, or jointly altogether; Respect still being had to their Declension: But the first Way is much easier, and will answer all the Purposes of Comparison as well as the other.

## CAP. II.

## De Pronomine.

M. QUot sunt Pronomina  
† simplicia?

D. Octodecim; *Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester; Nostras, Vestras, & Cujas.*

¶ Ex his tria sunt substantiva, *Ego, Tu, Sui*; reliqua quindecim sunt Adjectiva.

## CHAP. II.

## Of Pronoun.

M. HOw many Simple Pronouns are there?

S. Eighteen; *Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester; Nostras, Vestras and Cujas.*

¶ Of these, three are Substantives, *Ego, Tu, Sui*; the other Fifteen are Adjectives.

## Ego, I.

Sing. { *Nom. ego, I,*  
*Gen. mei, of me,*  
*Dat. mihi, to me,*  
*Acc. me. me,*  
*Voc. ———*  
*Abl. me, with me:*

Plur. { *Nom. nos, we,*  
*Gen. nostrum vel nostri, of us,*  
*Dat. nobis, to us,*  
*Acc. nos, us,*  
*Vo. ———*  
*Abl. nobis, with us.*

## Tu, Thou.

Sing. { *N. tu, thou,*  
*G. tui, of thee,*  
*D. tibi, to thee,*  
*A. te, thee,*  
*V. tu, O thou,*  
*A. te, with thee:*

or you.

Plur. { *N. vos, ye [you,]*  
*G. vestrum vel vestri, of you,*  
*D. vobis, to you,*  
*A. vos, you,*  
*V. vos, O ye [you]*  
*A. vobis, with you.*

Sui,



Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.	N. _____	Plur.	N. _____
	G. fui, of himself, &c.		G. fui, of themselves,
	D. fibi, to himself,		D. fibi, to themselves,
	A. se, himself,		A. se, themselves,
	V. _____		V. _____
	A. se, with himself:		A. se, with themselves.

A PRONOUN is an irregular kind of Noun: Or, it is a Part of Speech which has Respect to, and supplies the Place of, a Noun; as, instead of your Name, I say *Tu*, *Thou*, or *You*; instead of *Jacobus fecit*, *James* did it, I say, *Ille fecit*, He did it, viz. *James*.

NOTE, 1. That the *Dat. Mihi* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi*.

NOTE, 2. That of old the Genit. Plur. of *Ego* was *Nostorum* and *Nostorum*; of *Tu*, *Vestorum* and *Vestorum*, (of which there are several Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Nostum* and *Vestum*.

NOTE, 3. That we use *Nostum* and *Vestum* after Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other Nouns and Verbs, tho' there want not some Examples of these last with *nostum* and *vestum*, even in *Cicero* himself, as *Vossius* shews.

Ille, illa, illud; He, she, that, or it.

Sing.	N. ille, illa, illud,	Plur.	N. illi, illæ, illa,
	G. illius, illius, illius,		G. illorum, illarum, illorum,
	D. illi, illi, illi,		D. illis, illis, illis,
	A. illum, illam, illud,		A. illos, illas, illa,
	V. ille, illa, illud,		V. illi, illæ, illa,
	A. illo, illa, illo:		A. illis, illis, illis.

*Ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*; he himself, she herself, itself, and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*; he, she, that, are declined as *ille*, save only that *ipse* hath *ipsum* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. Neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc; This.

Sing.	N. hic, hæc, hoc,	Plur.	N. hi, hæ, hæc,
	G. hujus, hujus, hujus,		G. horum, harum, horum,
	D. huic, huic, huic,		D. his, his, his,
	A. hunc, hanc, hoc,		A. hos, has, hæc,
	V. hic, hæc, hoc,		V. hi, hæ, hæc,
	A. hoc, hac, hoc:		A. his, his, his.

Is, ea, id; He, she, it, or that.

Sing.	N. is, ea, id,	Plur.	N. ii, eæ, ea,
	G. ejus, ejus, ejus,		G. eorum, earum, eorum,
	D. ei, ei, ei,		D. iis, vel eis,
	A. eum, eam, id,		A. eos, eas, ea,
	V. _____		V. _____
	A. eo, ea, eo:		A. iis, vel eis.

Quis

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid; *Who, which, what?*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*N.* quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid,

*N.* qui, quæ, quæ,

*G.* cujus, cujus, cujus,

*G.* quorum, quarum, quorum,

*D.* cui, cui, cui,

*D.* queis *vel* quibus.

*A.* quem, quam, quod *v.* quid,

*A.* quos, quas, quæ,

*V.* \_\_\_\_\_

*V.* \_\_\_\_\_

*A.* quo, qua, quo :

*A.* queis *vel* quibus.

Qui, quæ, quod? *Who, which, that.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*N.* qui, quæ, quod,

*N.* qui, quæ, quæ,

*G.* cujus, cujus, cujus,

*G.* quorum, quarum, quorum,

*D.* cui, cui, cui,

*D.* queis *vel* quibus,

*A.* quem, quam, quod,

*A.* quos, quas, quæ,

*V.* \_\_\_\_\_

*V.* \_\_\_\_\_

*A.* quo, qua, quo :

*A.* queis *vel* quibus.

*Meus*, my, or mine; *Tuus*, thy, or thine; *Suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own; are declined like *Bonus*, *a*, *um*: And *Noster*, our, or ours; *Vester*, your, or yours, like *Pulcher*, *chra*, *-chrum*, of the First and Second Declension. But *Tuus*, *Suus*, and *Vester*, want the Vocative; *Noster* and *Meus* have it, in which this last hath *mi*, (and sometimes *meus*) in the Masc. Sing.

*Nostras*, of our Country; *Vestras*, of your Country; *Cujas*, of what or which Country; are declin'd like *Felix*, of the Third Declension; Gen. *nostratis*, Dat. *nostrati*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon, or address himself unto, want the Vocative. In Consequence of which Rule many Nouns; as, *Nullus*, *Nemo*, *Qualis*, *Quantus*, *Quot*, &c. and several Pronouns; as, *Ego*, *Sui*, *Quis*, &c. want the Vocative; but not so many, either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which Reason we have given Vocatives to *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Hic* and *Idem*, therein following the Judgment of the great *Vassins*, *Messieurs de Port-Royal* and *Johnson*, which they support by the following Authorities.

*Esto vinct, sol, testis, & hac mihi terra precanti.* Virg. *Æn.* 12.

*Tu mihi libertas illa paterna veni.* Tibul. lib. 2. El. 4.

*O nox illa, quæ pene æternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti.* Cic. pro Flacco.

*Ipse meas æther accipe sum me prece.* Ovid. in Ibin.

And the Vocative of *Idem* seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid.

Met. 15.

----- *Unique fuisti*

*Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem viribus esto.*

Tho' all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, *viz.* *Tu*, *Mens*, *Noster* and *Nostras*, to have the Vocative.

NOTE,

NOTE, 2. That *Qui* is sometimes used for *Quis*; as, Cic. *Qui tantus fuit labor?* Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris?*

NOTE, 3. That *Quod* with its Compounds, *Aliquod, quodvis, quoddam,* &c. are used when they agree with a Substantive in the same Case; *Quid*, with its Compounds, *Aliquid, Quidvis, Quiddam,* &c. either have no Substantive exprest, or govern one in the Genitive: Whence it is that these last are commonly reckoned Substantives. But that *quid* as well as *quod* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly shews; otherwise we shall make *Multum, Plus, Tantum, Quantum,* &c. also Substantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet most Grammarians agree to be Adjectives having the common Word *Negotium* understood.

NOTE, 4. That *Qui* the Relative have oft times *qui* in the Ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as Mr. Johnson evinces by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos* III. 3.

NOTE, 5. That *Nostras, Vestras* and *Cujas* are declined like *Gentile* or *National* Nouns in as of the third Decl. in Imitation of which they are formed, as, *Arpinas, Fidenas, Privernas*, a Man, Woman, or Thing, of or belonging to the Towns of *Arpinum, Fidena* or *Privernum*, and may have the Neut. as well as these: (For as Cic. has *Iter Arpinas*, and Liv. *Bellum Privernas*, so Colum. has *Arbusum nostras*, and Cic. *nostratia verba*) contrary to what *Linacer* teaches.

[I pass over taking Notice that in old Authors, especially *Plautus*, we find *quis* and *quisquis* sometimes of the Femin. Gender, *mis* and *tis*, for *mei* and *tui*; *hiscæ*, for *hi*; *hibus, ibus*, for *his, iis*; *illæ, ipsæ, istæ, quæ*, in the Gen. or Dat. Sing. Fem. em, for *eum*; *istæ*, for *istos*; *quois*, *quoi*, for *cujus, cui*; because they are extraordinary.]

### OF COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with some other Word or Syllable. In these *Quis* is sometimes the first, and sometimes the last Part of the Word compounded; but *Qui* is always the first.

1. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put first, are *Quisnam*, who; *Quispiam*, *Quisquam*, any one; *Quisque*, every one; *Quisquis*, whatsoever: Which are thus declined,

	Nom.		Gen.		Dat.
<i>Quisnam</i> ,	<i>quænam</i> ,	<i>quodnam</i>	<i>vel quidnam</i> ;	<i>cujusnam</i> ,	<i>cuinam</i> .
<i>Quispiam</i> ,	<i>quæpiam</i> ,	<i>quodpiam</i>	<i>vel quidpiam</i> ;	<i>cujuspiam</i> ,	<i>cuipiam</i> .
<i>Quisquam</i> ,	<i>quæquam</i> ,	<i>quodquam</i>	<i>vel quidquam</i> ;	<i>cujusquam</i> ,	<i>cuiquam</i> .
<i>Quisque</i> ,	<i>quæque</i> ,	<i>quodque</i>	<i>vel quidque</i> ;	<i>cujusque</i> ,	<i>cuique</i> .
<i>Quisquis</i> ,		<i>quidquid</i>	<i>vel quicquid</i> ;	<i>cujuscujus</i> ,	<i>cuicui</i> .

And so forth in their other Cases, according to the simple *Quis*. But *Quisquis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nominat. and Accut. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam*, for *quidquam*, Acc. *quæquam*, without the Fem. The Plural is scarcely used.

2. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put last, are *Aliquis*, some; *Ecquis*, who? To which some add *Nequis*, *Siquis* and *Numquis*; but these are more frequently read separately, *ne quis, si quis, num quis*. They are thus declined.

	Nom.			Gen.	Dat.
<i>Aliquis</i> ,	<i>aliqua</i> ,	<i>aliquod</i>	<i>vel aliquid</i> ;	<i>alicujus</i> ,	<i>alicui</i> .
<i>Ecquis</i> ,	<i>ecqua</i> <i>vel ecquæ</i> ,	<i>ecquod</i>	<i>vel ecquid</i> ;	<i>eccujus</i> ,	<i>eccui</i> .
<i>Si quis</i> ,	<i>si qua</i> ,	<i>si quod</i>	<i>vel si quid</i> ;	<i>si cujus</i> ,	<i>si cui</i> .
<i>Nequis</i> ,	<i>ne qua</i> ,	<i>ne quod</i>	<i>vel ne quid</i> ;	<i>ne cujus</i> ,	<i>ne cui</i> .
<i>Num quis</i> ,	<i>num qua</i> ,	<i>num quod</i>	<i>vel num quid</i> ;	<i>num cujus</i> ,	<i>num cui</i> .

NOTE, That these and only these have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut.

3. The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicumque*, whosoever; *Quidam*, some; *Quilibet*, *Quivis*, any one, whom you please; and are thus declined,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Quicumque, quæcunque, quodcunque;	cujuscunque,	cuicumque.
Quidam, quædam, quoddam vel quiddam;	cujusdam,	cuidam.
Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet vel quidlibet;	cujuslibet,	cuilibet.
Quivis, quævis, quodvis vel quidvis;	cujusvis,	cuivis.

Some of these are twice compounded, as, *Ecquisnam*, who? *Unusquisque*, every one. The first is scarce declined beyond its Nomin. and the second wants the Plur.

NOTE, 1. That all these Compounds want the Vocative, except *Quisque*, *Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Unusquisque*, and perhaps some others. *Vid. Vossium*, p. 335.

NOTE, 2. That all these Compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

NOTE, 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* vel *quiddam* in the Accus. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam* in the Genit. Plur. *n* being put instead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the same Reason in these Cases of *Idem*.

II. Some reckon among Compound Pronouns, *Ego*, *Tu* and *Sui* with *Ipse*: But in the best Books they are generally read separately; which seems necessary because of *teipse*, and *seipse*, where the two Words are of different Cases.

III. *Is*, is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *Idem*, the same; which is thus declined,

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. <i>Idem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Nom. <i>iidem</i> , <i>eædem</i> , <i>eadem</i> ,
Gen. <i>eiusdem</i> ,	<i>eiusdem</i> , <i>eiusdem</i> ,	Gen. <i>eorundem</i> , <i>earundem</i> , <i>eorundem</i> ,
Dat. <i>eidem</i> ,	<i>eidem</i> , <i>eidem</i> ,	Dat. <i>eisdem</i> vel <i>iisdem</i> ,
Acc. <i>eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Acc. <i>eisdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>eadem</i> ,
Voc. <i>idem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Voc. <i>iidem</i> <i>eædem</i> , <i>eadem</i> ,
Abl. <i>eodem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> , <i>eodem</i> :	Abl. <i>eisdem</i> vel <i>iisdem</i> .

IV. Most of the other Compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Cases and Genders, as,

1. Of *iste* and *hic* is compounded *Isthic*, *isthæc*, *isthoc*, vel *isthuc*. Acc. *Isthanc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc*, vel *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut. *Isthæc*.

2. Of *Ecce* and *is* is compounded *Eccum*, *eccam*; Plur. *eccos*, *eccas*; and from *Ecce* & *Il*, *Ellum*, *ellam*; *ellos*, *ellas*; in the Accusatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *hic*, *iste*, and *quis*, are compounded these Genitives, *Ejusmodi*, *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *cuiusmodi*; and sometimes with the Syllable *ce*, put in the middle, *ejuscemodi*, *hujuscemodi*. &c.

4. Of *cum* and these Ablatives *me*, *te*, *se*, *mihi*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui* or *quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quicum* or *quocum* and *quibuscum*.

5. To these add some Pronouns compounded with these Syllabical Adjections, *met*, *te*, *ce*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed and Emphatical; as, *egomet*, *tute*, *hujusce*, *meapte*, *hiccine*.

#### REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or *Foregoing State* (as the English Grammarians call it) we use, *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *She*, *We*, *Ye*, *They*, and *Who*: But in the other Cases, (which they Name *The following State*) we use, *Me*, *Thee*, *Him*, *Her*, *Us*, *You*, *Them*, and *Whom*.

2. When



2. When we speak of a *Person*, we use *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ask a Question or not; as, *Who did it? The Man who did it.* But if we speak of a *Thing*, with a Question, we use *What*; as, *What Book is that?* Without a Question we use *Which*; as, *The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently understood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often used, even without a Question, instead of *The Thing which*, or *That which*; as, *I know what you design*, i. e. *The Thing which*, or *that which* you design. As, on the contrary, when it refers to some particular thing mentioned before, we make use of *which*, even with a Question; as, *Give me the Book. Which Book? Which of the Books?*

3. *This*, makes in the Plur. *These*, and *That* makes *Those*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently used instead of *Who*, *Whom* or *Which*; as, *The Man that told you, The Man that we saw, The Book that I lent you.*

4. We use *My*, *Thy*, *Her*, *Ours*, *Your*, *Their*, when they are joined with Substantives, or the Word *Own*; and *Mine*, *Thine*, *Hers*, *Ours*, *Theirs*, when the Substantive is left out or understood; as, *My Book, This Book is mine, &c.*

NOTE, That with *Own*, or a Substantive beginning with a Vowel, we sometimes use *Mine* and *Thine*; as, *My Eye*, or *Mine Eye*; *Thy own*, or *Thine own*.

5. We often use *Here*, *There*, *Where*, compounded with these Particles, *Of*, *By*, *Upon*, *About*, *In*, *With*, instead of *This*, *That*, *Which* and *What*, with these same Particles; as, *Hereof*, *Hereby*, *Herenpon*, *Hereabouts*, *Herein*, *Herewith*; for, *Of this*, *By this*, *Upon this*, *About this Place*, *in this*, *With this*, &c.

6. *Whose* and *Its* are Genitives, instead of, *Of whom*, *Of it*; and it is a Fault to use *Its* for *'Tis* or *It is*, as some do.

C A P. III.

De Verbo.

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Verbum?

D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros & Personas.

M. Quot sunt voces.

D. Duæ; *Activa & Passiva.*

M. Quot sunt Modi?

D. Quatuor; *Indicativus, Subjunctivus, Imperativus & Infinitivus.*

M. Quot sunt numeri?

C H A P. III.

Of Verb.

M. **H**ow is a Verb declined?

S. By Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons.

M. How many Voices are there?

S. Two; the Active and Passive.

M. How many Moods are there?

S. Four; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative and Infinitive.

M. How many Numbers are there?

D. 2

D. Duo;

D. Duo; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt tempora?

D. Quinque; Præsens, Præteritum imperfectum, Præteritum perfectum, Præteritum plusquamperfectum & futurum.

M. Quot sunt Personæ?

D. Tres; Prima, Secunda, Tertia.

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Tenses are there?

S. Five; the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect and the Future.

M. How many Persons are there?

S. Three; First, Second, Third.

A VERB is *A Part of Speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer*: Or, *A Verb is that Part of Speech which expresses what is affirmed or said of Things.*

A Verb may be distinguished from any other Part of Speech these two Ways. 1. A Verb being the most necessary and essential Part of a Sentence, without which it cannot subsist, whatever Word with a Substantive Noun makes full Sense, or a Sentence, is a Verb; and that which does not make full Sense with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with HE or IT SHALL before it makes Sense, is a Verb; otherwise not.

I. In most Verbs there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE ending in *o*, and the PASSIVE in *or*. The former expresses what is done by the Nominative or Person before it: The latter what is suffered by, or done to the Nominative or Person before it; as, *Amo*, I love; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The MOODS are divided into *Finite* and *Infinite*. The first three, viz. the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive* and *Imperative*, are called *FINITE*, because they have certain fixt Terminations answering to certain Persons both singular and plural. The last is called *INFINITIVE* or *INFINITE*, because it is not confined to one Number or Person more than another.

1. The *INDICATIVE* Mood affirms or denies positively; as, *Amo*, I love; *Non amo*, I do not love: Or else asks a Question; as, *An amas?* Dost thou love? *Annon amas?* Dost thou not love?

2. The *SUBJUNCTIVE* Mood generally depends upon another Verb in the same Sentence, either going before or coming after; as, *Si me ametis, precepta mea servate*; If ye love me, keep my Commandments.

[This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods, viz. The Optative, the Subjunctive more strictly taken, and the Potential. 1. It is called *OPTATIVE*, when a Word importing a Wish, as, *Utinam*, *Would to God*, *Oh*, *O if*, goes before it. 2. It is named *SUBJUNCTIVE*, when it is subjoined to some other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives becoming Indefinites (See Chap. IX.) 3. It is called *POTENTIAL*, when with the simple Affirmation of the Verb is also signified some Modification or Affection of it, such as a Power, Possibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, &c. The Signs whereof in our Language are, *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Could*, *Would*, *Should*, and *Had*, (for *Would have* or *Should have*; as, *They had repented*, for *would have*.)

But

But because the Terminations of these Moods are the same, we have comprehended them all under one, viz. the Subjunctive, to which with small Difficulty they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater Number, and so we shall have a Promissive, Hortative, Precative, Concessive, Mandative, Interrogative Mood; nay, a Volitive and Debitive, which is commonly included in the Potential. As for the Optative, 'tis plain that the Wish is not in the Verb itself, (which signifies only the Matter of it, or what is wished) but in the Verb Opto, which is understood, with ut, uti, or utinam, which really signify no more but That. And 'tis very probable that in like manner some Verb, or other Word, may also be understood to what is called the Potential Mood, such as, Ita est, Resita est, Fieri potest ut, &c. As, Vossius, Sanctius, Pelizonius and others do contend; tho' Mr. Johnson is of another Opinion.

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts or intreats; as, *Ama*, Love thou.

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Englished by TO; as, *Amare*, To love.

III. The TENSES are either Simple or Compound. The SIMPLE Tenses are the Present, the Preter-perfect, and Future.

1. The PRESENT

2. The PRETER-PERFECT } Tense speaks of Time now {

3. The FUTURE

Present.

Past.

To come.

The COMPOUND Tenses are the Preter-imperfect, and the Preter-pluperfect.

4. The PRETER-IMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the thing was present and unfinished then; as, *Amabam*, I did love, [viz. then.]

5. The PRETER-PLUPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the thing was past at or before that Time; as, *Scripteram epistolam*, I had written a Letter, [i. e. before that Time.]

There is also a Compound Future Tense, called the FUTURE-PERFECT or EXACT, which refers to some Time yet to come, and imports that a thing as yet future shall be past and finished at or before that Time; as, *Cum cenavero tu leges*, When I shall have supped, [i. e. after Supper] you shall read. This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is *Shall have*; as the other Future, called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two Things yet future shall be contemporary or exist at one Time; as, *Cum cenabo tu leges*, When I shall sup, [i. e. in Time of Supper] you shall read.

[And not only the Tenses, but even the MOODS themselves may be divided into SIMPLE and COMPOUND. I call the Indicative a Simple Mood, because it simply affirms something of its Person or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call Compound, because they have some other Idea's or Modifications of our Thoughts superadded to the simple Signification of the Verb, such as, a Command, a Desire, Prohibition, Possibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wish, Concession, Supposition, Condition, Purpose, &c. These Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as a Command, &c. in the Imperative, and according to Johnson, Power, Will, Duty, &c. in the Mood called Potential; or closely interwoven with it by the help of a Conjunction, Adverb or other Verb, express or understood: And because these also generally connote Time, they,

they very frequently make all the Tenses of these Moods to become Compound Tenses. For, with respect to their Execution, they are generally future; but with respect to their Modal Signification, they may fall under any of the other Distinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for Instance, *Leges, Read thou*, with respect to its Execution, is future; but with respect to the Command, it is present. Again in *Legam, I may or can read*, the Action (if done at all) must be future. but the Liberty or Possibility are present; and so of others. Now, as it seems evident, that from these Modifications of the Verb, more than from the bare Execution of it, the Tenses of these Moods have at first been distinguished, so I am of Opinion, that had Grammarians taken their Measures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as *Sanctius, &c.* determining the Times of these Moods by the Execution only, have made the whole Imperative and Subjunctive of the future time, and the Infinitive and Participles of all Times, or rather of no Time: Others, viz. *Vossius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c.* tho' they will not go so far as *Sanctius*, yet upon the same Grounds make *Utinam legam*, the Future of the Optative; *Utinam legessem* the Present of it. By the same Rule they make a Future of the Potential in *RIM*; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should or shall sooner believe: And another of the Subjunctive in *ISSEM*; as, *Juravit se illum statim interfectorum*, nisi *jusjurandum sibi dedisset*, He swore he would presently kill him, if he should not swear to him, *Cic.* But with all imaginable Deference to these great Men, I humbly think, that these Tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as Compound, i. e. respecting one Time as to their Execution, and another as to the various Modifications superadded to, or involved in, their Signification. To instance in the two last Examples, (because they seem to have the greatest Difficulty) *Citius crediderim* seems to import these two things; 1<sup>st</sup> Thus I have, and continue to have, a Reason why I should not believe it; which Reason is of the Imperfect or past Time. And 2<sup>dly</sup>, That I shall sooner have believed it than another Thing, with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many Examples where the Preterit in *RIM* hath the same Signification with the Future perfect in *RO*; as, *Si te inde eximerim*, *Terent.* for *eximero*. See *Vossius*, lib. V. cap. 15. and *Aulus Gellius*, lib. XV. li. cap. 2. As to the other Examples, the Composition of two Times is yet more evident; for tho' *jusjurandum dedisset* be posterior, and consequently future with respect to *Juravit*, yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to *interfecturum*; to prevent which it behoved it necessarily to be past: And so of others. The same Rule in my Opinion will likewise hold in the Infinitives and Participles, which of themselves have always one fixed Time; and when they seem to be of another Time, that it is not in them, but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for Instance, *Scribere* is always present, or consistent with the Verb before it; and *Scripsisse* is always prior to the same Verb, in all its Tenses; as, *Dicit, dixit, or dicet; juvat, juvit, or juvabit* Me scribere and Me scripsisse. So also the Participles have a fixed Time, present, past or future; and when any Part of the Verb *Sum* is joined with them, they retain their own Times, and have these of that Verb superadded to them. But because there are innumerable Occasions of Speaking, wherein the nice Distinctions of Times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiscuously used: As I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the Passive, but Active Voice, both in the Latin and other Languages, if there were place for it. Which yet in my Judgment does not hinder but that every Part of a Verb hath formally and of its own Nature a certain Time simple or compound, to which it is fixed and determin'd.]



IV. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, answering to the same Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

V. There are three PERSONS in each Number: The FIRST speaks of itself, the SECOND is spoken to, and the THIRD is spoken of. The FIRST hath only EGO and NOS; the SECOND only TU and VOS, and the THIRD any Substantive NOUN-Singular and Plural put before the respective Terminations of the Verb, answering to them through all Voices, Moods and Tenses.

[A Verb hath the same respect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to its Substantive; and therefore, as an Adjective hath not properly either Genders or Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for these of its Substantive; so a Verb hath properly neither Persons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations answering to the Persons and Numbers of its Nominative.]

NOTE, 1. That Ego and Tu are seldom express'd, because the Terminations of the Verb immediately discover them, without any Hazard of a Mistake.

NOTE, 2. That if a Substantive be joined with Ego it becomes the first Person, if with Tu the second.

NOTE, 3. That in a Continuation of a Discourse, the third Person is also frequently understood, because easily known by what went before; and these Pronouns, *ille, ipse, isse, hic, is, idem, quis* and *qui*, do often supply the Place of it.

### The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Present	Act. The Theme of the Verb, and <i>est, eth, or s</i> ; or for the greater Emphasis, <i>do, dost, doth, or does</i> before it.
	Pass. <i>am, art, is, are, be, beest</i> , with a Word in <i>ed, on, t, &amp;c.</i>
Imperf.	Act. <i>ed, edst, &amp;c.</i> or for the greater Emphasis; <i>aids, didst</i> , before it.
	Pass. <i>was, wast, were, wert</i> , with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i>
Perfect.	Act. <i>have, had, hath, or has</i> , with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i> or as the Imp.
	Pass. <i>have been, hath been, hath or has been</i> , with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i>
Pluper.	Act. <i>had, hadst</i> , with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i>
	Pass. <i>had been, hadst been</i> , with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i>
Future	Act. <i>shall, will, shalt, wilt</i> , with the Verb.
	Pass. <i>shall be, will be, shalt be, wilt be</i> , with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i>

The Subjunctive Mood Active has frequently these Signs,

Present, *may* or *can*.

Imperf. *might, could, would, should*.

Perfect. *may have, or might have, could have, would have, should have*.

Plup. *might have, could have, would have, should have or had*.

The Passive has frequently the same Signs, with *be, or been*.

Future, *shall have*.

### De Conjugationibus.

M. Q Uot sunt Conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; Prima, Secunda, Tertia & Quarta.

M. Quæ sunt Notæ harum Conjugationum?

### Of Conjugations.

M. H Ow many Conjugations are there?

S. Four; First, Second, Third and Fourth.

M. What are the Marks of these Conjugations?

D. Pri-

D.				S.			
Prima	habet	A longum	ante re	First	hath	A long	before re of the Infinitive.
Secunda		E longum		Second		E long	
Tertia		E breve		Third		E short	
Quarta		I longum		Fourth		I long	
Infinitivi.							

The common *Characteristick* or MARK, by which these Conjugations are distinguished from one another, is one of these three Vowels A, E, I, before the RE of the Infinitive Active, tho' they may also be known by the same Vowels in several other Parts of them; for A long is most frequent in the First, E long in the Second, E or I short in the Third, and I long in the Fourth: Only E before *ham, bas, bat, &c.* and before *mus* and *tis*, and *mur* and *mini*, is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But 'tis to be observed, that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts formed from them (because of the great Irregularity of their middle Syllables, and constant Agreement to their last Vowel, and in the Terminations arising from it, in all Conjugations) cannot properly be said to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui, Docui, Elicui, Amicui*, or in *Fractum, Doctum, Elicitum, Amictum*, or in the Parts that come from them, whereby to distinguish their Conjugations.

## Prima Conjugatio.

A M O.

Vox Activa.

Præcipuæ Partes.

Præs. Indic.

Am-o,

Perfect.

am-avi,

Sup.

am-atum,

Præs. Infin.

am-are.

INDICATIVUS Modus.

Præsens.

- 1 M-o,  
2 A Am-as,  
3 Am-at:  
1 Am-amus,  
2 Am-atis,  
3 Am-ant.

Imperfectum.

- 1 Am-abam,  
2 Am-abas,  
3 Am-abat:  
1 Am-abamus,  
2 Am-abatis,  
3 Am-abant.

## The First Conjugation.

To Love.

The Active Voice.

The Principal Parts.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

The Present.

- 1 I Love, or do love,  
2 Thou lovest, or dost love,  
3 He loveth, or doth love:  
1 We love, or do love,  
2 Ye (or you) love, or do love,  
3 They love, or do love.

The Imperfect.

- 1 I loved, or did love,  
2 Thou lovedst, or didst love,  
3 He loved, or did love:  
1 We loved, or did love,  
2 Ye loved, or did love,  
3 They loved, or did love.

Per-

Sing.

Plur.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

SUBJ

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

Per-

Or,

*Perfectum.*

The Perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-avi,	1	I have loved, †
	2	Am-avisti,	2	Thou hast loved,
	3	Am-avit :	3	He hath loved:
Plur.	1	Am-avimus,	1	We have loved,
	2	Am-avistis,	2	Ye have loved,
	3	Am-averunt, vel -avere.	3	They have loved.

*Plusquamperfectum.*

The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-averam,	1	I had loved,
	2	Am-averas,	2	Thou hadst loved,
	3	Am-averat :	3	He had loved:
Plur.	1	Am-averamus,	1	We had loved,
	2	Am-averatis,	2	Ye had loved,
	3	Am-averant.	3	They had loved.

*Futurum.*

The Future.

Sing.	1	Am-abo,	1	I shall or will love,
	2	Am-abis,	2	Thou shalt or wilt love,
	3	Am-abit :	3	He shall or will love:
Plur.	1	Am-abimus,	1	We shall or will love,
	2	Am-abitis,	2	Ye shall or will love,
	3	Am-abunt.	3	They shall or will love.

*SUBJUNCTIVUS.*

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

*Præsens.*

The Present.

Sing.	1	Am-em,	1	I may or can love,
	2	Am-es,	2	Thou may'st or canst love,
	3	Am-et :	3	He may or can love :
Plur.	1	Am-emus,	1	We may or can love,
	2	Am-etis,	2	Ye may or can love,
	3	Am-ent.	3	They may or can love.

*Imperfectum.*

The Imperfect.

Sing.	1	Am-arem,	1	I might, could, would or should
	2	Am-ares,	2	Thou mightest, couldst, would, &c.
	3	Am-aret :	3	He might, could, would or should
Plur.	1	Am-aremus,	1	We might, could, would or should
	2	Am-aretis,	2	Ye might, could, would or should
	3	Am-arent.	3	They might, could, would or should

Per-

† Or, I loved, or did love, Thou lovedst, or didst love, &c. as in the Imperf.

## Perfectum.

## The Perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-averim,	1	I may have loved,
	2	Am-averis,	2	Thou mayst have loved,
	3	Am-averit :	3	He may have loved :
Plur.	1	Am-averimus,	1	We may have loved,
	2	Am-averitis,	2	Ye may have loved,
	3	Am-averint.	3	They may have loved.

## Plusquamperfectum.

## The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-avissē,	1	I might, could, would, &c. have or
	2	Am-avisses,	2	Thou mightest, couldst, &c. have or
	3	Am-avisset :	3	He might, could, &c. have or
Plur.	1	Am-avissēmus,	1	We might, could, &c. have or
	2	Am-avissetis,	2	Ye might, could, &c. have or
	3	Am-avissent.	3	They might, could, &c. have or

had loved.

## Futurum.

## The Future.

Sing.	1	Am-avero,	1	I shall have loved,
	2	Am-averis,	2	Thou shalt have loved,
	3	Am-averit :	3	He shall have loved :
Plur.	1	Am-averimus	1	We shall have loved,
	2	Am-averitis,	2	Ye shall have loved,
	3	Am-averint.	3	They shall have loved.

## IMPERATIVUS Modus.

## The IMPERATIVE Mood.

## Præsens.

## The Present.

Sing.	2	Am-a vèl am-ato,	2	Love thou or do thou love,
	3	Am-ato :	3	Let him love :
	2	Am-ate vèl am-atote,	2	Love ye or do ye love,
Plur.	3	Am-anto.	3	Let them Love.

## INFINITIVUS Modus.

## The INFINITIVE Mood.

Præf. Am-are.

Præf. To love.

Per. A-mavisse.

Perf. To have or had loved.

Fut. Am-aturum { esse vel  
fuisse.

Fut. To be about to love.

## PARTICIPIA.

## The PARTICIPLES.

Præf. Am-ans.

Of the Present, Loving.

Fut. Am-aturus, -a, -um,

Of the Future, About to love.

## GERUNDIA.

## The GERUNDS.

Nom. Am-andum,

Nom. Loving,

Gen. Am-andi,

Gen. Of loving,

Dat.



Dat. Am-ando,  
Acc. Am-andum,  
Abl. Am-ando,

SUPINA.

Prius, Am-atum.  
Posterius, Am-atu.

Dat. To loving,  
Acc. Loving,  
Abl. From, in or by loving.

The SUPINES.

First, To love.  
Last, To love, or to be loved.

VOX PASSIVA.

The Passive Voice.

Amor,

amatus,

amari.

INDICATIVUS Modus. The INDICATIVE Mood.

Præsens.

The Present.

Sing. { 1 Am-or,  
2 Am-aris vel am-are,  
3 Amatur:  
Plur. { 1 Am-amur,  
2 Am-amini,  
3 Am-antur.

1 I am loved,  
2 Thou art loved;  
3 He is loved:  
1 We are loved,  
2 Ye are loved,  
3 They are loved.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

Sing. { 1 Am-abar,  
2 Am-abaris vel -abare,  
3 Am-abatur:  
Plur. { 1 Am-abamur,  
2 Am-abimini,  
3 Am-abantur.

1 I was  
2 Thou wast [wert]  
3 He was  
1 We were  
2 Ye were  
3 They were } loved.

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 sum vel fui,  
2 es vel fuisti,  
3 est vel fuit:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 sumus vel fuimus,  
2 estis vel fuistis,  
3 sunt, fuerunt, fuere.

1 I have been  
2 Thou hast been  
3 He hath been  
1 We have been  
2 Ye have been  
3 They have been } loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plu-perfect.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 eram vel fueram,  
2 eras vel fueras,  
3 erat vel fuerat:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 eramus, fueramus,  
2 eratis vel fueratis,  
3 erant vel fuerant.

1 I had been  
2 Thou hadst been  
3 He had been  
1 We had been  
2 Ye had been  
3 They had been } loved.

Futurum.

The Future.

Sing. { 1 Amabor,  
2 Am-aberis vel -abere,  
3 Am-abitur:

1 I shall or will be  
2 Thou shalt or wilt be  
3 He shall or will be } loved.

Plur.

- Plur. { 1 Am-abimur,  
2 Am-abimini,  
3 Am-abuntur.

- 1 We shall or will be  
2 Ye shall or will be  
3 They shall or will be } loved.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus.

## The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

## Præsens.

## The Present.

- Sing. { 1 Am-er,  
2 Am-eris vel -ere,  
3 Am-etur:  
Plur. { 1 Am-emur,  
2 Am-emiini,  
3 Am-entur.

- 1 I may or can be  
2 Thou mayst or canst be  
3 He may or can be  
1 We may or can be  
2 Ye may or can be  
3 They may or can be } loved.

## Imperfectum.

## The Imperfect.

- Sing. { 1 Am-arer,  
2 Am-areris vel -arere,  
3 Am-aretur:  
Plur. { 1 Am-aremur,  
2 Am-aremini,  
3 Am-arentur.

- 1 I might, could, would, &c.  
2 Thou mightest, could, &c.  
3 He might, could, &c.  
1 We might, could, &c.  
2 Ye might, could, &c.  
3 They might, could, &c. } be loved.

## Perfectum.

## The Perfect.

- Sing. { Am-atus { 1 am vel fuerim,  
2 sis vel fueris,  
3 sit vel fuerit:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 simus vel fuerimus,  
2 sitis vel fueritis,  
3 sint vel fuerint.

- 1 I may have been  
2 Thou may'st have been  
3 He may have been  
1 We may have been  
2 Ye may have been  
3 They may have been } loved.

## Plusquamperfectum.

## The Plu-perfect.

- Sing. { Am-atus { 1 essem vel fuisset,  
2 esses vel fuisses,  
3 esset vel fuisset:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 essemus vel fuissetus,  
2 essetis vel fuissetis,  
3 essent vel fuissent.

- 1 I might, could, &c. have or  
2 Thou mightest, &c. have or  
3 He might, &c. have or  
1 We might, &c. have or  
2 Ye might, &c. have or  
3 They might, &c. have or } had been loved.

## Futurum.

## The Future.

- Sing. { Am-atus { 1 fuero,  
2 fueris  
3 fuerit:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 fuerimus,  
2 fueritis,  
3 fuerint.

- 1 I shall have been  
2 Thou shalt have been  
3 He shall have been  
1 We shall have been  
2 Ye shall have been  
3 They shall have been } loved.

## IMPERATIVUS Modus.

## The IMPERATIVE Mood.

## Præsens.

## The Present.

- Sing. { 2 Am-are vel am-ator,  
3 Am-ator:

- 2 Be thou loved,  
3 Let him be loved:

Plur.

Plur. 2 Am-amini, 2 Be ye loved.  
3 Am-antor. 3 Let them be loved.

INFINITIVUS Modus. The INFINITIVE Mood.

Præs. Am-ari. To be loved.  
Perf. Am-atum { esse, vel  
fuisse. To have, or had been loved.  
Fut. Am-atum iri. To be about to be loved.

PARTICIPIA. The PARTICIPLES.

Perfecti temporis, Am-atus, -a, -um. Of the Perfect, Loved.  
Futuri, Am-andus, -a, -um. Of the Fut. To be loved.

Secunda Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			Plur.		
Pr. D	1	2	3	1	2	3
	Doc-co,	-es,	-et ;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.
Im. Doc-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat ;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	
Per. Doc-ui,	-uisti,	-uit ;	-uimus,	-uistis	{ -uerunt,	
					{ -uere.	
Pl. Doc-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat ;	-ueramus,	-ueratis	-uerant.	
Fu. Doc-ebo,	-ebis,	-ebit ;	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.	

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat ;	-eamus,	-eatis,	-eant.
Im. Doc-erem,	-eres,	-eret ;	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Per. Doc-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit ;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Pl. Doc-uisssem,	-uisses,	-uisset ;	-uisssemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
Fu. Doc-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit ;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Doc	{ -e	-eto ;	{ -ete,	-ento.
	-eto,		-etote,	

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

Præs. Doc-ere.	1. Doct-um.	Pr. Doc-ens.	Doc-endum.
Perf. Doc-uisse.	2. Doc-tu.	Fu. Doc-turus.	Doc-endi.
Fu. Doc-turum			Loc-endo.
esse v. fuisse.			

- Plur. { 1 Am-abimur,  
2 Am-abimini,  
3 Am-abuntur.

- 1 We shall or will be  
2 Ye shall or will be  
3 They shall or will be } loved.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus.

## The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

## Præsens.

## The Present.

- Sing. { 1 Am-er,  
2 Am-eris vel -ere,  
3 Am-etur:

- 1 I may or can be  
2 Thou mayst or canst be  
3 He may or can be } loved.

- Plur. { 1 Am-emur,  
2 Am-emiini,  
3 Am-entur.

- 1 We may or can be  
2 Ye may or can be  
3 They may or can be }

## Imperfectum.

## The Imperfect.

- Sing. { 1 Am-arer,  
2 Am-areris vel -arere,  
3 Am-aretur:

- 1 I might, could, would, &c.  
2 Thou mightest, could, &c.  
3 He might, could, &c.

- Plur. { 1 Am-aremur,  
2 Am-aremini,  
3 Am-arentur.

- 1 We might, could, &c.  
2 Ye might, could, &c.  
3 They might, could, &c. } be loved.

## Perfectum.

## The Perfect.

- Sing. { Am-atus { 1 am vel fuerim,  
2 sis vel fueris,  
3 sit vel fuerit:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 simus vel fuerimus,  
2 sitis vel fueritis,  
3 sint vel fuerint.

- 1 I may have been  
2 Thou mayst have been  
3 He may have been  
1 We may have been  
2 Ye may have been  
3 They may have been } loved.

## Plusquamperfectum.

## The Plu-perfect.

- Sing. { Am-atus { 1 essem vel fuisset,  
2 esses vel fuisses,  
3 esset vel fuisset:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 essemus vel fuisset,  
2 essetis vel fuissetis,  
3 essent vel fuissent.

- 1 I might, could, &c. have or  
2 Thou mightest, &c. have or  
3 He might, &c. have or  
1 We might, &c. have or  
2 Ye might, &c. have or  
3 They might, &c. have or } had been loved.

## Futurum.

## The Future.

- Sing. { Am-atus { 1 fuero,  
2 fueris  
3 fuerit:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 fuerimus,  
2 fueritis,  
3 fuerint.

- 1 I shall have been  
2 Thou shalt have been  
3 He shall have been  
1 We shall have been  
2 Ye shall have been  
3 They shall have been } loved.

## IMPERATIVUS Modus.

## The IMPERATIVE Mood.

## Præsens.

## The Present.

- Sing. { 2 Am-are vel am-ator,  
3 Am-ator:

- 2 Be thou loved,  
3 Let him be loved:

Plur.



*Plur.* 2 Am-amini, 2 Be ye loved.  
3 Am-antor. 3 Let them be loved.

**INFINITIVUS** *Modus.* The **INFINITIVE** *Mood.*

*Præs.* Am-ari. To be loved.

*Perf.* Am-atum { esse, vel To have, or had been loved;  
fuisse.

*Fut.* Am-atum iri. To be about to be loved.

**PARTICIPIA.** The **PARTICIPLES.**

*Perfecti temporis,* Am-atus, -a, -um. Of the Perfect, Loved.

*Futuri,* Am-andus, -a, -um. Of the Fut. To be loved.

Secunda Conjugatio.

**VOX ACTIVA.**

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

**INDICATIVUS.**

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

<i>Pr.</i> <b>D</b> <sup>1</sup>	<sup>2</sup>	<sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup>	<sup>2</sup>	<sup>2</sup>	<sup>3</sup>
Doc-eo,	-es,	-et ;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.	
<i>Im.</i> Doc-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat ;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	
<i>Ter.</i> Doc-ui,	-uisti,	-uit ;	-uimus,	-uistis	{	-uerunt,
						-uere.
<i>Pl.</i> Doc-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat ;	-ueramus,	-ueratis		-uerant.
<i>Fu.</i> Doc-ebo,	-ebis,	-ebit ;	-ebimus,	-ebitis,		-ebunt.

**SUBJUNCTIVUS.**

<i>Pr.</i> Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat ;	-eamus,	-eatis,	-eant.
<i>Im.</i> Doc-erem,	-eres,	-eret ;	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Per.</i> Doc-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit ;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Pl.</i> Doc-uisssem,	-uisses,	-uisset ;	-uisssemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fu.</i> Doc-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit ;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

**IMPERATIVUS.**

*Præs.* Doc { -e, -eto ; { -ete, -etote, -ento.

**INFINITIVUS.** **SUPINA.** **PARTICIPIA.** **GERUNDIA.**

<i>Præs.</i> Doc-ere.	1. Doct-um.	<i>Pr.</i> Doc-ens.	Doc-endum.
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uisse.	2. Doc-tu.	<i>Fu.</i> Doc-turus.	Doc-endi.
<i>Fu.</i> Doc-turum			Doc-endo.
esse v. fuisse.			

## VOX PASSIVA.

Doceor, doctus, doceri.

## INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

*Pr.* Doc-eor, { -eris, -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.  
 { -ere,

*Im.* Doc-ebar, { -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.  
 { -ebare,

*Fut.* Doc-ebor, { -eberis, -ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.  
 { -ebere,

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Pr.* Doc-ear, { -earis, -eatur; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.  
 { -eare,

*Im.* Doc-erer, { -ereris, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.  
 { -erere,

## IMPERATIVUS.

*Præs.* Doc. { -ere, -etor; -emini, -entor.  
 { -etor,

## INFINITIVUS.

## PARTICIPIA.

*Præs.* Doc-eri.*Per.* Doc-tus, -a, -um.*Perf.* Doc-tum esse vel fuisse.*Fut.* Doc-endus, -a, -um.*Fut.* Doc-tum iri.

## Tertia Conjugatio.

## VOX ACTIVA.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

## INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

*Pr.* **L** Eg-o, -is -it -imus, -itis, -unt.

*Im.* **L** Leg-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant

*Perf.* Leg-i, -isti, -it; -imus, -istis, -erunt, -ere.

*Pl.* Leg-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

*Fut.* Leg-am, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* Leg-am, -as, -at; -amus, -atis, -ant.

*Imp.* Leg-erem, -eres, -eret; -eremus, -eretis, -erent.

*Perf.*

Part II. Chap. III. of Verbs.

39

*Perf.* Leg-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.  
*Plus.* Leg-issem, -isses, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.  
*Fut.* Leg-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

*Præs.* Leg { -e, -ito; { -ite, -unto.  
 -ito, -itote,

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

<i>Præs.</i> Leg-ere.	1. Lec-tum.	<i>Pr.</i> Leg-ens.	Leg-endum.
<i>Perf.</i> Leg-isse.	2. Lec-tu.	<i>Fut.</i> Lec-turus.	Leg-endi.
<i>Fut.</i> Lec-turum esse vel fuisse.			Leg-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Legor, lectus, legi.

INDICATIVUS.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Leg-or,	{ -eris, -itur; -ere,	-imur, -imini, -untur.
<i>Im.</i> Leg-ebar,	{ -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebare,	-ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
<i>Fut.</i> Leg-ar,	{ -eris, -etur; -ere,	-emur, -emini, -entur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* Legar, { -aris, -atur; -amur, -amini, -antur.  
 -are,  
*Imp.* Leg-erer, { -ereris, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.  
 -erere,

IMPERATIVUS.

*Præs.* Leg { -ere -itor; -imini, -untor.  
 -itor,

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

<i>Præs.</i> Leg-i.	<i>Perf.</i> Lec-tus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Lec-tum esse vel fuisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Leg-endus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Lec-tum iri.	

# Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

## Quarta Conjugatio.

### VOX ACTIVA.

Audio, audiui, auditum, audire.

### INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.				Plur.			
Pr.	<sup>1</sup> A Udio,	<sup>2</sup> -is,	<sup>3</sup> -it;	<sup>1</sup> -imus,	<sup>2</sup> -itis,	<sup>3</sup> -iunt,		
Im.	Aud iebam,	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.		
Per.	Aud-ivi,	-ivisti,	-ivit;	-ivimus,	-ivistis,	-iverunt,		
						-ivere.		
Pl.	Aud-iveram,	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.		
Fu.	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iemus,	-etis,	-ient.		

### SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
Im.	Aud-irem,	-ires,	-iret;	-iremus,	-iretis,	-irent.
Per.	Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
Pl.	Aud-ivissem,	-ivisses,	-ivisset;	-ivissemus,	-ivissetis,	-ivissent.
Fu.	Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

### IMPERATIVUS.

Pr.	Aud	{ -io,	-ito;	{ -te,	-iunto.
		-ito,		-itote,	

### INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

Pr.	Aud-ire,	1. Aud-itum.	Pr.	Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.
Per.	Aud-ivisse.	2. Aud-itu.	Fu.	Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.
Fu.	Aud-iturum				Aud-iendo.
	esse v. fuisse.				

### VOX PASSIVA.

Audior, auditus, audiri.

### INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.				Plur.			
Pr.	Aud-ior,	{ -iris,	-itur;	-imur,	-imini,	-iuntur.		
		-ire,						
Im.	Aud-iebar,	{ -iebaris,	-iebatur;	-iebamur,	-iebamini,	-iebantur.		
		-iebare,						
Fu.	Aud-iar,	{ -ieris,	-ietur;	-iemur,	-iemini,	-ientur.		
		-iere,						

### SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs.	Aud-iar,	{ -iaris,	-iatur;	-iamur,	-iamini,	-iantur.
		-iare,				
Imp.	Aud-irer,	{ -ireris,	-iretur;	-iremur,	-iremini,	-irentur.
		-irere,				



IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Aud. { -ire, -itor; -imini, -iuntur.

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

Præs. Aud. -iri.

Per. Aud. -itus,

-a,

-um.

Per. Aud. -itum { esse, fuisse.

Fut. Aud. -iendus,

-a,

-um.

Fut. Aud. -itum -iri.

Note, That in the Examples of the Second, Third and Fourth Conjugations, we have omitted such Parts of the Passive Voice as are supplied by the Participle perfect with the Verb Sum, viz. the Perfect and Plu-perfect of the Indicative, and the Perfect, Plu-perfect and Future of the Subjunctive, as being the same in all Conjugations with the Example of the First, the Change of the Participle only excepted: But 'tis carefully to be observed, that the Participle being an Adjective must agree in Gender, Number and Case with its Substantive, or (which is the same Thing) with the Person before it.

I. REMARKS shewing when a LATIN Verb is to be rendered otherwise in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Example.

When the Continuation of a Thing is signified, the English Verb may be varied in all its Tenses by the Participle in ING, with the Verb Am; as,

Præs. I am reading,

Imp. I was reading,

Perf. I have been reading,

Plu. I had been reading,

Fut. I shall be reading,

{ for }

I read.

I did read.

I have read.

I had read.

I shall read.

So likewise in the Passive Voice, The House is building, Domus ædificatur, The Lesson was prescribing, Lectio præscribebatur. Sometimes a is set before the Participle; as, While the House is a building, It is a doing, He is a dying.

2. When a Question is asked, the Nominative Case or Person is set after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, Love I? Do I love? Can I love? Should he be loved?

3. We have made THOU the second Person Singular, to distinguish it from the Plural. But it is customary with us (as also with the French and others) tho' we speak but to one particular Person, to use the Plural YOU; and never THOU, but when we address ourselves to Almighty God, or otherwise when we signify Familiarity, Disdain or Contempt.

4. The

4. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* is often Englished as the *Imperfect*; as, *Nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved [or did love] this Man. See a Train of Examples in *Ovid. Metamorph. lib. 1. from ver. 21 to 39.*

5. The *PERFECT* Tense is frequently Englished by *HAD* after *Antequam*, *Postquam*, *Ubi* or *Ut* for *Postquam*; as, *Postquam superavimus Isthmum*, After we had [were] pass'd over the Isthmus, *Ovid. Hec ubi dicta dedit*, When he had spoken these words, *Liv. Ut me salutavit, statim Romam profectus est*, After he had saluted me, &c. *Cic.*

6. We have chosen *MAY*, *CAN*, *MIGHT*, *COULD*, &c. for the English of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* Mood, because these are the most frequent Signs of it, and distinguish it best from other Moods; but very often it is the same with the *Indicative*, save only that it hath some *Conjunction* or *Indefinite* Word before it, such as, *Is*, *Seeing*, *Lest*, *That*, *Although*, *I wish*, &c. as, *Si amem*, If I love; *Ne amem*, Lest I love; *Causa est cur amem*, It is the Cause why I love, *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut ames*, I entreat that you may love, *Idem.*

7. The *PRESENT* of the *Subjunctive*, after *Quasi*, *Tanquam*, and the like, is sometimes Englished as the *Imperfect*; as, *Quasi intelligant qualis sit*, As if they understood what kind of Person he is, *Cic.*

8. When a Question is asked, the *Present* of the *Subjunctive* is frequently Englished by *SHALL* or *SHOULD*; as, *Eloquar an sciam?* Shall I speak or be silent? *Virg. Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? *Ovid.* Likewise after *Non est quod*; as, *Non est (supple causa) quod eas*, There is no Reason why you should go, or you need not go. Sometimes it is Englished by *WOULD*; as, *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think they had sworn to [commit] wickedness, *Ovid.*

9. We have Englished the *PERFECT* of the *Subjunctive* in *RIM* by *MAY HAVE*; (as, *Ne frustra hi tales viri viderint*. That such Men as these may not have come in vain, *Cic. Forsitan audieris*. You may perhaps have heard it;) to distinguish it from the *Present* and *Plu-perfect*, by the Signs of which it is also most frequently Englished; as, *Ut sic dixerim*, That I may so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where should I have heard it? *Unus homin tantas strages ediderit?* Could one Man make so great a slaughter? *Virg. Fortasse errarim*, Perhaps I might be in an Error, *Plin. Oratores quos viderim peritissimis*, The ablest Orators I have seen, [or could see] *Quintil.*

10. This *Perfect* in *RIM* sometimes inclines very much to a future Signification, and then it is Englished by *SHOULD*, *WOULD*, *COULD*, *CAN*, *WILL*, *SHALL*; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, *Juv. Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear, *Cic. Cicero nem cuiusquam erram facile opposuerim*, I could easily match Cicero with any of them, *Quintil. Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, *Cic. Nec tamen excluderim alios*, And yet I will not exclude others, *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, If you but trip in the least, I shall be undone, *Ter.* But all those ways of speaking, though indeed they respect the Future as to the Execution, yet they seem also to look a little beyond it, to a Time when their Futurity shall be past; and so come near in Signification to the Future in *RO.*

11. The *Perfect* of the *Subjunctive* after *Quasi*, *Tanquam*, and the like may sometimes be Englished by *HAD*; as, *Quasi affuerim*, As if I had been present, *Plant. Perinde ac si jam vicerint*, As if they had already overcome, *Cic.*

12. The *PLU-PERFECT* in *ISSEM* is sometimes Englished by *SHOULD*; as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcumque imperavisset, se esse factum*, He might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded [should com-

mand] they would do, *Cæs. Fœdus idum est his legibus, ut cujus populi cujus eo certamine vicissent, is alteri imperaret*, An Agreement was made on these Terms, that that People whose Country-men should be victorious in that Combat, should have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a thing is signified as future at a certain past time referred to; and commonly takes place, when what was formerly said directly, is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *Ne dubita, dabitur quodcumque optaris*, Doubt not whatsoever thou shalt choose shall be given thee, *Ovid. Sol. Phaethonti facturum se esse dixit, quicquid optasset*, The Sun told Phaethon that he would do whatsoever he should choose, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, That what was the Future of the *Subjunctive* in the direct Speech, becomes the *Pluperfect* in the indirect Recital of it. See *Turner's Exercises* Pag. 21. &c. But as we have said Pag. 10. the *Pluperfect*, notwithstanding its coming in the Place of a Future, still retains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a Thing now past at the Time of the Recital by *Cicero*, tho' it was future when first spoken by the Sun. And therefore there is no Reason for making this Termination *issim* a Future Tense, as Mr. *Turner* does.

13. Tho' the proper English of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE, yet generally the HAVE, or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted; as, *qui Antonium opprresserit, is bellum confecerit*, He who shall cut off Antony, shall put an End to the War, *Cic.* *Haud desinam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter.* *Si negaverit*, If he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is Englished by WILL; as, *Dixerit fortasse aliquis*, Some body will perhaps say, *Cic.* *Ant consolando, aut consilio, aut rejuvero*, I will assist you either by comforting you, or with Counsel, or with Money, *Idem.* But tho' we thus render the Future in RO in our Language, and tho' (which is more material) very frequently it and the Future of the *Indicative*, are used promiscuously, yet I cannot be persuaded that in any Instance the formal Signification of these are the same, as Mr. *Johnson* contends, P. 339. but still think with the great *Vossius* that the Future in RO is always a Future Perfect, that is, that there is a Time insinuated when a Thing yet future shall be finished or past; and that even when a Future of the *Indicative* is joined with it, which in order of Time should be done before it; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris, si disputabis*, You shall have done [shall do] me a great Favour, if you shall dispute, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finishing of an Action yet future, without formally considering the finishing of another Action on which it depends, and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous Usage of Tenses one for another be sufficient to make them formally the same, then we shall confound all Tenses, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr. *Johnson* makes use of against *Saunders* with respect to the Tenses of the Infinitive.

14. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Would*, *Could*, (which are sometimes Verbs themselves, and not the bare Signs of them;) also after *Must*, *Bid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Help* and *Make*.

15. But what is most to be regarded in the Infinitive is, that when it hath an Accusative before it, it is commonly Englished as the Indicative Mood, the Particle THAT being sometimes put before it, but oftner understood. And it is carefully to be remarked that the same Tenses of the Infinitive are differently Englished, according as the preceding Verb varies its Tenses; as will appear in the following Scheme.

{ *Dixit me scribere,*  
 { *Dixit me scribere,*  
 { *Dixit me scribere,*

He says [that] I write.  
 He said [that] I was writing.  
 He shall say [that] I am writing.

*Dixit*

{	<i>Dicit me scripſiſſe,</i>	He ſays [that] I wrote, or did write.
{	<i>Dixit me ſcripſiſſe,</i>	He ſaid [that] I had written.
{	<i>Dicet me ſcripſiſſe,</i>	He ſhall ſay [that] I have written, or did write.
{	<i>Dicit me ſcripturum eſſe,</i>	He ſays [that] I will write.
{	<i>Dixit me ſcripturum eſſe,</i>	He ſaid [that] I would write.
{	<i>Dicet me ſcripturum eſſe,</i>	He ſhall ſay [that] I will write.
{	<i>Dicit me ſcripturum fuiſſe,</i>	He ſays [that] I would have written.
{	<i>Dixit me ſcripturum fuiſſe,</i>	He ſaid [that] I would have written.
{	<i>Dicet me ſcripturum fuiſſe,</i>	He ſhall ſay [that] I would have written.

It will be of great Uſe to accuſtom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this Manner, both in *Engliſh* and *Latin* eſpecially after he has been taught ſomething of Conſtruction: And then to cauſe him vary the Accuſative *Me* into *Te; ſe, illum, hominem, ſeminam,* &c. and theſe again into the Plural, *Nos, vos, ſe, illos, homines, ſeminas,* &c. But he muſt be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number and Caſe.

NOTE, 1. That when the Preceding Verb is of the *Preſent* or *Future* Tenſe, the *Fut.* of the *Infinitive* with *eſſe* is rendered by *SHALL* or *WILL*; and when it is of the *Perſect* Tenſe, the *Fut.* of the *Infinitive* is rendered by *WOULD*, as in the Examples above; and ſometimes by *SHOULD*; as, *Dixi ſciturum eſſe,* I ſaid that you ſhould know.

NOTE, 2. That when the preceding Verb is of the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* Tenſes, the *Engliſh* of the *Infinitive* is the ſame as when it is of the *Perſect*.

16. The *Perſect* of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive Paſſive*, made up with *ſum* or *ſim*, are Engliſhed by *AM, ART, IS, ARE,* inſtead of *HAVE BEEN*, when the Thing is ſignified to be juſt now paſt; as, *Vulneratus ſum,* I am wounded; *Opus finitum eſt,* The Work is finiſhed. *Cum tempora mutata ſint,* Since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made by *fui*, it is frequently Engliſhed by *WAS, WAST, WERE, WERT*; as, *Roma fuit capta,* Rome was taken: As alſo what is called the *Plu-perfect*, with *eram* and *eſſem*; as, *Labor finitus erat,* the Labour was finiſhed. *Si labor finitus eſſet,* If the Labour were finiſhed.

## II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations.

I. A Great Part of the *Paſſive Voice*, and ſome of the *Active*, is made up of two of its own Participles and the Auxiliary Verb *ſum* (of which you have the full Conjugation page 52.) after this Manner.

The Participle Perſect with	{	<i>ſum</i> or <i>fui</i>	{	makes the	{	Perf.	{	Indicat.	{	Paſſive.
		<i>eram</i> or <i>fuera</i>				Plup.				
		<i>ſim</i> or <i>fuera</i>				Perf.				
		<i>eſſem</i> or <i>fuſſem</i>				Plup.		Subjunſt.		
		<i>fuero</i>				Fut.				
The Participle Fut. Active with	{	<i>eſſe</i> or <i>fuſſe.</i>	{		{	Perf.	{	Infinit.	{	
								Fut. Infinit. Active.		

2. Having Page 30. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every Part of a Verb, with all its Participles, have a certain fixt Time ſimple or compound, which they formally and of their own Nature ſignify; it will perhaps be here expected that I ſhould account for that great Variety



Variety that is found in the *Passive Voice*. To put this Matter in the clearest Light I am able, I must premise another Division of the *Tenses*, viz. into *PAS-SING* and *PAST*; or into such as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the Ending or Finishing of it; and such as import that the thing is finished (or to be finished) and done. Of the first Sort are the *Present*, *Imperfect* and *Future Imperfect*; of the second Sort are the *Perfect*, *Imperfect* and *Future Perfect*. See Page 29. From this Division of the *Tenses*, together with what we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy Method of distinguishing all the Parts of the *Passive*. Thus, for Instance, let the Subject of Discourse be the Building of an House, 1. When I say *Domus edificatur*, I mean that it is just now a building, but not finished. 2. When *Edificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain past Time, a building, but not then finished. 3. *Edificabitur*, that some Time hence it shall be a building, without any formal Regard to the finishing of it. But when I make use of the *Participle Perfect*, I always signify a Thing compleated and ended; but with these Subdistinctions. 1. *Edificata est*; I mean simply, that it is finished, without any regard to the Time when. 2. *Edificata fuit*; it is finished, and some Time since intervened. 3. *Edificata erat*; it was finished at a certain past Time refer'd to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Edificata fuerat*; it was finished before a certain past Time refer'd to, to which it was prior. 5. *Edificata erit*; it shall be finished some Time hereafter, either without Regard to a particular Time when; or with Respect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finishing shall be contemporary. 6. And lastly, *Edificata fuerit*; it shall be finished and past before another Thing yet future, to which its Finishing shall be prior. And thus we have nine different Times, or Complication of Times, without confounding them with one another. But then how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used promiscuously? I answer, That this proceeds from one or more of these four Reasons. 1. Because it very frequently happens in Discourse that we have no Occasion particularly to consider these various Relations and Complications of Times; and 'tis the same thing to our Purpose whether the Thing is or was done, or a doing; or whether it was done just now, or some Time ago, or whether another Thing was (or shall be) contemporary with, or prior to it. And the Matter being thus, we reckon our selves at Liberty to take several Parts of the Verb at Random, as being secure not only of being understood, but also that in these Circumstances whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the Rules above, shall be found literally true. 2. It is usual with us to state our selves as present with, and as it were Eye witnesses of the Things we relate, tho' really they were transacted long before. whence 'tis that we frequently use the Present instead of some past Time. 3. 'Tis to be remarked that there are some Verbs, the Action whereof is in some Sense finished when begun; in which Case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the passing or past Tenses. And 4. The Present Tense (which strictly speaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger Acceptation, and sometimes used for the Future, when we signify that the Execution is very near, or (according to *Perizonius*) when together with the Action we take in also the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are confin'd to will not allow us to illustrate these Things with Examples. But by them I think we may account for the promiscuous Usage of the Tenses in both Voices; and what cannot be reduced to these seems to be an Abuse of the Language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the Poets, ought not to be made a common Standard. I shall only add

for a Proof that these Tenses are not always to be used indifferently, that all when we signify a thing to be just now finished, we cannot use *fui* or *fuerim*, or *fuisse*, but *sum*, *sim* and *esse*.

3. Whether the Learner should be obliged to get by Heart these Parts of the *Passive* that are supplied by *SUM*, or if they should be referred to Construction (to which they seem more naturally to belong) I leave to the Discretion of the Master, and therefore have put them in a smaller Character.

4. Besides these Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be resolved into its own Participles and the Verb *Sum*, tho' their Significations are not precisely the same; as,

<i>Amo,</i>	<i>amabam,</i>	<i>amavi,</i>	<i>amaveram,</i>	<i>amabo.</i>
<i>Sum amans,</i>	<i>eram amans,</i>	<i>fui amans,</i>	<i>fueram amans,</i>	<i>ero amans,</i>

<i>Amor,</i>	<i>amator,</i>	<i>amator,</i>	<i>amator,</i>	<i>amator.</i>
<i>Sum amatus,</i>	<i>eram amatus,</i>	<i>ero amatus,</i>	<i>amatus sim,</i>	<i>amatus esse.</i>

5. The Participle in *RUS* with the Verb *Sum* is frequently used instead of the *Future* of the *Indicative*, especially if *Purpose* or *Intention* is signified as, *Profecturus sum*, or *Profectus sum*, I will go, or I am to go; and with *Sim* and *Essem* instead of the *Future Imperfect*, or *Plu-perfect* of the *Subjunctive* as, *Non dubito quin sit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it. *Non dubitavi quin esset facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *fecisset*.

6. We have not joined *ERO* with *FUERO* for the *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, because we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different Moods. Tho' it must be owned that it comes nearer in Signification to the *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, than that of the *Indicative*; as *Ovid. Qui cum victus erit*, is much the same, as *Victus fuerit*: And so these antient Lawyers, *Scavola*, *Brutus* and *Manilius* understood the Words of the *Atinian Law*, *Quod interptum erit, ejus rei aeterna auctoritas esto*. But that a *Preterite* Time is therein insinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit*, but to the *Preterite Participle* with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue, See *Anlus Gellius lib. XVII. cap. 7*.

7. We have omitted the Termination *MINOR* in the second Person Plural of the *Imperative*, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Standard (as the common *Rudiments* do) which is to be found only once or twice in *Plautus*, *Epid. 5. 2. Facto opere arbitraminor*. And *Pseud. 2. 2. Pariter progredimur*.

8. For the same Reason we have excluded the ancient Termination *ASSO* in the *Future Subjunctive* of the first Conjugation, as, *Excantasso* in the *Laws of the 12 Tables*, *Levasso* in *Ennius*, *Abjurasso*, *Invitasso*, *Canasso*, *Invitasso*, *Servasso*, &c. in *Plautus*; for *Excantavero*, *Levavero*, &c. to which may be added *ESSO* of the Second Conjugation; as, *Licessit*, *Idem*; *Prohibebessit*. *Cic. tor Licuerit, prohibuerit*; To these some add, *Jussio*, for *jusservo* in that of *Virg. Aen. 11. v. 467*.

*Catera, qua jussio, necum manus inferat arma.*

But, tho' I was once of that Opinion, yet I now incline with *Vossius* to think that it is only a *Syncope*; but not for the Reason brought for it by him, namely, that the other Examples in *esso*, change *r* into *s*, as, *Levaro*, *Levassio*, but because I believe these old Futures were formed not from the common Futures in *ero*, as he supposes; but from the Second Person Sing. of the Present of the Indic. by adding *so*, as, *Levas, levasso*; *Prohibes, prohibessio*. According to which Rule *Jubeo* must have formed *jubeo*, not *jussio*.

9. Upon the same account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive in ASSERE formed from ASSO; as *Impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnassere*, in *Plautus*; for *impetraturum esse*, &c.

10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse vel fuisse*, &c. in the Nominative; as, *Dicitur amaturus esse*, yet we have contented ourselves with the Accusative *amaturum* and *amatum*, as most common, reserving the Distinction between these to Construction. [See Pag. 77.]

11. The Future of the Infinitive Passive is made up of the First Supine and IRI the Infinitive Passive of EO: And therefore it is not varied in Numbers and Genders as the Parts made up of the Participle with SUM.

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as some teach; for such Phrases as these, *Amatum ire, Docum ire*, are rather of the present, than Future Tense.

13. The Participle in DUS, with *esse* and *fuisse*, is not properly the Future of the Infinitive Passive, as is commonly believed: For it does not so much import Futurity, as Necessity, Duty, or Merit. For there is a great Difference between these two Sentences, *Dicit literas a se scriptum iri*, and *Dicit literas a se scribendas esse*; the first signifying, That a Letter will be written by him, or, That he will write a Letter; and the Second, That a Letter must be written by him, or He is obliged to write a Letter. For tho' *Sandlins* and *Messieurs de Port Royal* contend that this Participle is sometimes used for simple Futurity, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnson* have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the Imperative Mood wants the first Person both Singular and Plural, because no Man can or needs command or exhort himself: Or, if he does, he must juggle himself out of the first into the second Person, as in that of *Catullus*, speaking to himself, *At tu Catulle destinatus odura*, But you *Catullus* continue obstinate.

15. The Present of the Subjunctive is most frequently used instead of the Imperative, especially in forbidding, after *Ne, nemo, nullus*, &c. as, *Valeas*, Farewell, for *Vale*. *Ne facias*, Do it not, rather than *Ne fac*. And sometimes the Future of the Subjunctive; as, *Tu videris*, See you to it. *Ne dixeris*, Don't say it. And sometimes also the Future of the Indicative; as, *Non occides*, Thou shalt not kill, for *Ne occide*, or *occidito*. *Sed valebis meaque negotia videbis*, Cic. i. e. *Sed vale meaque negotia vide*. *Referes ergo hac & nuncius ibis Pelide genitori*. Virg. i. e. *refer & ito*. But 'tis to be remark'd that none of these are proper Imperatives; for to the first is understood *oro*, *rogo*, *peto*, or the like, with *ut*; as also to the second, with *ut* understood, or *ne* express; and the third is only a Command by Consequence, because of the Authority, Influence or Power of the Speaker. For which Reason, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded these from the Imperative: Tho' the common Rudiments take in the first, and *Alvars* the second and third. However 'tis observable that we shew most Civility and Respect when we use the Subjunctive, and most Authority by the Future of the Indicative, and NTO of the Imperative; which last is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are deliver'd. But this Rule is not always followed.

16. The RIS of the second Persons Passive is more usual than RE; and ERUNT of the Perfect of the Indicative Active than ERE; especially in Prose, in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

## III. REMARKS upon ENGLISH Verbs.

1. **A**N English Verb hath only two *Tenses*, distinguished by different *Terminations*, and both in the *Active Voice*, viz. The *Present* and *Preterite*. The *Present* is the Verb itself, and the *Preterite* is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*, as, *Fill, filled; Love, loved*.

2. All the other Parts of the *Active*, and the whole *Passive* is made up of the auxiliary Verbs, *Do, have, shall, will, may, can* and *am*; as in Pag. 31. and in the Example *To love*, Pag. 32. &c.

3. An English Verb hath different Terminations for the Persons of the Singular Number. The *Present* hath three or four. The first Person is the Verb itself; the second ends in *est* or *st*, the third in *eth*, *es*, or *s*. The *Preterite* hath only two; the first commonly ending in *ed*, and the second in *est* or *st*. But the third Person Singular of the *Preterite*, and all the Persons Plural, both of it and the *Present*, cannot otherwise be distinguished than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the *Latin*.

4. We have two *Participles*, the *Present* ending always in *ing*, and the *Preterite* ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many *Irregular English Verbs*. But it is to be noted, 1. That that *irregularity* relates only to the Termination of the *Preterite Tense*, and the *Passive Participle*. 2. That it reaches only such Words as are native, and originally *English*. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or deriv'd from Words of one Syllable. 4. That where the *Preterite* is regular, the *Passive Participle* is the same with it. Except *Hewed, mowed, shewed, snowed, sowed*; which have *Hewn, mown, shown, sown, sown*.

6. These *Irregularities* may be reduced to the following Heads.

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c, ch, sh, f, k, p, w*; and after *s* and *th*, when pronounced hard; and sometimes after *l, m, n, r*, when a short Vowel goes before it; as, *Plac't, snatch't, fish't, wak't, dwelt, smelt*. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one; as, *Kept, slept, wept, crept, swept, leapt*, from *keep, sleep, weep, creep, sweep, leap*; as also sometimes before *l, m, n, r*, and *v* turned into *j*, as, *Feel, felt; Dream, dreamt; Mean, meant; Leave, left*.

(2.) When the *Present* ends in *d*, or *t*, the *Preterite* is sometimes the same with it; as, *Read, cast, hurt, burst, hit, quit*; and when two Vowels precede, the last is left out; as, *Spread, sped; Lead, led; Feed, fed; Bleed, bled; Meet, met*. When a Consonant comes before *d*, it is sometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend, bent; Lend, lent; Send, sent; Rend, rent; Gird, girt*.

(3.) Most of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Lists.

I. Such as have their *Preterite* and *Participle Perfect* the same.

Awake, awoke.	Find, found.	Pay, paid.	Sting, stung.
Abide, abode.	Flee, fled.	Say, said.	Swing, swung.
Beseech, besought.	Hing, flung.	Seek, sought.	Swim, swum.
Bind, bound.	Grind, ground.	Sell, sold.	Teach, taught.
Bring, brought.	Guild, gilt.	Sit, sat.	Tell, told.
Buy, bought.	Hang, hung.	Shine, shone.	Think, thought.
Catch, caught.	Hear, heard.	Spin, spun.	Work, wrought.
Dig, dug.	Lay, laid.	Spring, sprung.	Win, won.
Drink, drunk.	Loose, lost.	Stand, stood.	Wind, wound.
Fight, fought.	Make, made.	Stick, stuck.	Wring, wrung.



II. Such as have the Preterite and Participle different; as,

Bear, bore, born.	Freeze, froze, frozen.	Shrink, shrank, shrunk.
Begin, began, begun.	Get, got, gotten.	Sink, sank, sunk.
Bid, bad, bidden.	Give, gave, given.	Slay, slew, slain.
Bear, bear, beaten.	Go, went, gone.	Slide, slid, slid.
Bite, bit, bitten.	Grow, grew, grown.	Smite, smote, smitten.
Blow, blew, blown.	Hew, hewed, hewn.	Strike, struck, stricken.
Chide, chid, chidden.	Hide, hid, hidden.	Speak, spoke, spoken.
Choose, chose, chosen.	Hold, held, holden.	Spit, spate, spitten.
Cleave, clove, clef.	Know, knew, known.	Strive, strove, striven.
Come, came, come.	Lay, lay, lay'n.	Swear, swore, sworn.
Crow, crew, crow'd.	Ride, rode, ridden.	Swell, swell'd, swollen.
Dare, durst, dared.	Ring, rang, rung.	Take, took, taken.
Do, did, done.	Rise, rose, risen.	Tear, tore, torn.
Draw, drew, drawn.	Run, ran, run.	Thrive, throve, thriven.
Drive, drove, driven.	See, saw, seen.	Throw, threw, thrown.
Eat, eat, eaten.	Seeth, sod, sodden.	Tread, trode, trodden.
Fall, fell, fallen.	Shake, shook, shaken.	Wear, wore, worn.
Fly, flew, flown.	Shear, shorn, shorn.	Weave, wove, woven.
Forake, forsook, forsaken.	Shoot, shot, shotten.	Write, wrote, written.

These Preterites *Bare, Share, Sware, Tare, Ware, Clave, Gat, Begat, Forat, Brake, Spake, Slang, Sprang, Swang, Wan, Stank, Sank*, are seldom used. But *Beseech'd, Catch'd, Work'd, Digged, Gilded, Girded, Hang'd, Swam, Writ, for Besought, Caught, &c.* are frequently to be met with.

NOTE, 1. That when the Verb ends in one Consonant, that Consonant is for the most part doubled before *ing, ed, est, edst, and eth*; as, *Worship, worshipping, worshipped, worshippingest, worshippeth*; as also before *en*; as, *Bid, bidden*.

NOTE, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common in English Verbs; as, *Lov'd, lov'g, for loved, lovess*;) begins now to be disused by the most polite Writers in Prose; but Poets still use it, tho' not so much as formerly.

NOTE, 3. That the Preterite Active, and the Participle Passive (when one Word serves for both) are thus distinguished: When it hath nothing before it but the Nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the Preterite Active; but when it hath any Part of the helping Verb AM, it is the Participle Passive.

EXCEPT *Come, Gone, Run, Set, Risen, Fallen, Grown, Withered*, and such like Intransitive Verbs, which have frequently the Passive Sign AM, ART, &c. instead of HAVE in the Perfect Tense; and WAS, WAST, &c. instead of HAD, in the Plus-perfect; as, *Veni, I am come, Veneram, I was come*.

NOTE, 4. That tho' the Latin Perfect frequently answers both to HAVE and BID (or the Preterite Termination ED, &c.) yet they seem to be thus distinguished: DID or ED, &c. respects a certain past Time, in which the Thing was finished, or a finishing; as, *I wrote, or did write yesterday*: HAVE either speaks of a Thing, as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular time that it happened at; as, *I have written my Letter*; i. e. just now; *I have read of Julius Cesar*, i. e. some time or other. The first of these is called the Preterperfect Definite, and the other the Preterperfect Indefinite.

NOTE, 5. That SHALL and WILL by Mr. Brightland are thus distinguished:

In the First Person simply SHALL foretels;  
 In WILL a Threat, or else a Promise dwells.  
 SHALL in the Second and the Third does threat;  
 WILL simply then foretels the future Feat.

By Mr. Turner thus:

WILL imports the *Will* or *Purpose* of the Person it is joined with; SHALL implies the *Will* of another, who *promises* or *threatens* to do the thing, or cause it to be done, *permits* it, *commands* it, or the like.

### De Formatione Verborum.

Quatuor sunt Terminationes Verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur, sciz. o Præsentis, i Præteriti, um Supini, & re Infinitivi, hoc modo;

1. Ab o formantur am & em.
2. Ab i formantur ram, rim, ro, ssem & sse.
3. Ab um formantur u, us, & rus.
4. A re formantur reliquæ omnes, nempe, bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.

### Of the Formation of Verbs.

There are four Terminations of a Verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely o of the Present, i of the Preterite, um of the Supine, and re of the Infinitive, after this Manner;

1. From o are form'd am and em.
2. From i, ram, rim, ro, ssem and ssem.
3. U, us and rus are form'd from um.
4. All other parts from re come; As bam, bo, rem, a, e and i. Ns and dus, dum, do and di.

In every complete Verb there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS, viz. The Present of the Indicative in O, the Preterite or Perfect in I, the first Supine in UM, and the Present of the Infinitive in RE. The first (which is therefore called the THEME or Root of the Verb) gives Origin to the whole Verb either mediately or immediately. The Preterite, the first Supine and the Present of the Infinitive come from it immediately, and all the rest from them; except the Future of the Indicative in am, and the Present of the Subjunctive in em or am, which by this Scheme are also formed immediately from the Present in O.

It is to be noted, that the Preterites and Supines of the First Conjugation are commonly in avi and atum. of the Second in ui and itum, and of the Third in iui and itum. But the Third Conjugation cannot be reduced to any general Rule, and there are a great many Exceptions in the other three, which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar is advanced to the Part of Grammar that treats particularly of them.

But the Present of the Infinitive, and all the other Parts of the Verb are regularly formed after one fixt and uniform manner.

In the foregoing Rules of Formation, I have for the Ease of the Memory put the Terminations instead of the Moods and Tenses; but for the greater Plainness they may be thus expressed.

I. From the *Present* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Future* of the *Indicative* of the *Third* and *Fourth* Conjugations in *am*, and the *Present* of the *Subjunctive* of the *First* in *em*, and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the *Perfect* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Plu-perfect* of it, the *Perfect*, *Plu-perfect* and *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, and the *Perfect* of the *Infinitive*.

III. From the *First Supine* is formed the *Last Supine*, the *Participle-perfect*, and *Future Active*.

IV. From the *Present* of the *Infinitive* are formed the *Imperfect* of the *Indicative*, the *Future* of the same when it ends in *BO*, (*viz.* in the first and second Conjugations,) the *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*, the *Imperative*, the *Participles Present*, and *Future Passive*, and the *Gerunds*.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in *IO* of the *Third* Conjugation retain *i* before *unt*, *into*, *ebam*, *am*, *ens*, *endus*, *endum*; but lose it in the *Present* of the *Infinitive*, and *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 2. That the *last Person Plur.* of the *Imperative* may be formed by adding *to* the same *Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*; as, *Amant*, *amant*;  
*docent*, *docento*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Passive Voice* is formed from the same *Tenses* of the *Active* (except where *Sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Passive* of the *Third* Conjugation may be formed by taking *s* from the *Second Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative Active*; as, *legis*, *legi*; or; when the Verb is *Deponent*, by changing *or*, or *ior* into *i*; as, *Proficiscor*, *proficisci*; *mori*, *mori*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Active*, and the *Second Person* of the *Indicative* and *Imperative Passive* in *re* are always the same.

NOTE, 6. That the *Second Person Plural* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*, and of the *Imperative* are the same in the *Passive Voice*.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the *Principal Parts* are wanting, these Parts are commonly wanting that come from them: For which Reason Grammarians give *Supines* to a great many Verbs, which are not to be found in any Author, because the *Participles* formed from them are found: And they suppose likewise all *Deponent* Verbs of old to have had the *Active Voice*, and consequently *Supines*, tho' now lost.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the *Second* Conjugation end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the *Fourth* end in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are eight Verbs in *eo* of the first Conjugation, *viz.* *beo*, *creo*, *creo*, *meo*, *calceo*, *laqueo*, *nausco*, *nusco*. There are 22 in *io* of the first, *viz.* *glacio*, *marcio*, *crucio*, *sanctio*, *nutrio*, *fascio*, *radio*, *bio*, *retalio*, *spolio*, *amplio*, *lanio*, *somnio*, *pio*, *frigio*, *vario*, *decurio*, *decenturio*, *sucenturio*, *furio*, *basio* and *vitio*; and 12 of the Third, *viz.* *cipio*, *facio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *specio*, *fodio*, *fugio*, *cupio*, *rapio*, *sapio*, *pario*, *quatio*; with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, necessary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the respective Changes in the Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons are made; they being obvious from the Example above, in which I have distinguished them from the *Body* or *Essential Part* of the Verb by a *Division* or *Hyphen*. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular Rule, might be a sufficient direction. For, to conjugate one Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but instead of the *Essential Part* of the one (which is all that stands before *o*, *eo*, or *io*, or the *Present* of the *Indicative*) to substitute the *Essential Part* of the other; and then to add to it the additional Syllables, it receives

in Conjugation as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the *Preterites* and *Sapines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to reckon all before *i* and *um* for the Body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllables to it, as in the *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2dly, In Verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i*, as in *Note 1*.

There is yet another Way of the Formation of Verbs, differing only from the first Method in this, that what Parts according to it are formed from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But tho' this may be the more natural Way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

## De verbis Irregularibus.

**IRREGULARIA** Verba vulgo recensentur octo, viz. *Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero & Fio, cum Compositis.*

## Of Irregular Verbs.

**THE IRREGULAR** Verbs are commonly reckoned Eight, viz. *Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero and Fio, with their Compounds.*

## S U M.

Sum, fui, esse,

To be.

## INDICATIVUS.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

## Præsens.

Sum, I am,  
Es, Thou art,  
Est: He is:  
Sumus, We are,  
Estis, Ye are,  
Sunt. They are.

Sim, I may or can be,  
Sis, Thou mayst or canst be,  
Sit: He may or can be:  
Simus, We may or can be,  
Sitis, Ye may or can be,  
Sint. They may or can be.

## Imperfectum.

Eram, I was,  
Eras, Thou wast,  
Erat: He was:  
Eramus, We were,  
Eratis, Ye were,  
Erant. They were.

Essem, I might, &c. be,  
Esles, Thou mightest be,  
Esset: He might be:  
Essemus, We might be,  
Essetis, Ye might be,  
Essent, They might be.

## Perfectum.

Fui, I have been,  
Fuisti, Thou hast been,  
Fuit: He hath been:  
Fuimus, We have been,  
Fuistis, Ye have been,  
Fuerunt They have been.

Fuerim, I may have been,  
Fueris, Thou mayst have been,  
Fuerit: He may have been:  
Fuerimus, We may have been,  
Fueritis, Ye may have been,  
Fuerint. They may have been.

vel-ere.

Plur.

Fuera  
Fuera  
Fuera  
Fuera  
Fuera  
Fuera

Ero,  
Eris,  
Erit:  
Erimu  
Eritis,  
Erunt.

I  
(E  
E  
E  
E  
E  
(S

The C  
sum, s  
jugated a  
for we d

PRO

INDIC.

SUBJ.

IMPERA

Possun  
but for th  
fore any  
sem and p  
some old

Præf. Pot  
Imp. Pot  
Præf. Pot  
Præf. Pot  
Præf. Pot



*Plusquam-perfectum.*

Fueram,	<i>I had been,</i>	Fuissem,	<i>I might, &amp;c. have</i>	} <i>or had been.</i>
Fueras,	<i>Thou hadst been,</i>	Fuisses;	<i>Thou mightest have</i>	
Fuerat :	<i>He had been:</i>	Fuisset :	<i>He might have</i>	
Fueramus,	<i>We had been,</i>	Fuissemus,	<i>We might have</i>	
Fueratis,	<i>Ye had been,</i>	Fuissetis,	<i>Ye might have</i>	
Fuerant.	<i>They had been.</i>	Fuissent.	<i>They might have</i>	

*Futurum.*

Ero,	<i>I shall or will be,</i>	Fuero,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
Eris,	<i>Thou shalt or wilt be,</i>	Fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have been,</i>
Erit:	<i>He shall or will be:</i>	Fuerit:	<i>He shall have been:</i>
Erimus,	<i>We shall or will be,</i>	Fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been,</i>
Eritis,	<i>Ye shall or will be,</i>	Fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have been,</i>
Erunt.	<i>They shall or will be.</i>	Fuerint.	<i>They shall have been.</i>

*IMPERATIVUS.*

*INFINITIVUS.*

Præsens.	(Es vel	} <i>Be thou,</i>	Præf. Esse,	<i>To be.</i>
	Esto,		Perf. Fuisse.	<i>To have been.</i>
	Esto:	<i>Let him be:</i>	Fut. Futurum	<i>To be about to</i>
	Este vel	} <i>Be ye,</i>	esse vel fuisse.	<i>[be.</i>
	Estote,			
	(Sunto.	<i>Let them be.</i>	Fut. Futurus.	<i>About to be.</i>

The Compounds of SUM are *Assum, absum, deum, intersum, præsum, consum, subsum, supersum, insum, prosum* and *possum*. The first Eight are conjugated as the Simple SUM: *Insum* wants the Preterite and its Descendents; for we do not use *Insui, insuisti, insueram, &c.*

PROSUM, *To do good*, has a *d* where SUM begins with *e*; as,

INDIC. { Præf. Pro sum, prod-es, prod-est: pro-sumus, prod-estis, pro-sunt.  
Imp. Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat. proderamus, &c.

SUBJ. Imp. Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset: prod-essemus, &c.

IMPERAT. Prod-este, prod-este. INFINIT. Præf. Prod-esse.

*Possum* should be *pot-sum* (as being compounded of *potis*, able, and *Sum*) but for the better Sound *t* is changed into *s* before another *s*, and retained before any other Letter: And for the same Reason *s* is always taken away. *Poss-um* and *posse* are contracted for *Potessum, potesse*, which are yet to be found in some old Authors; thus,

Possum, potui, posse, *To be able.*

*INDICATIVUS.*

Præf. Possum, potes, potest: possumus, potestis, possunt.  
Imp. Poteram, poteras, poterat: poteramus, poteratis, poterant.  
Perf. Potui, potuisti, potuit: potuimus, potuistis, potuerunt vel potuere.  
Plus. Potueram, potueras, potuerat: potueramus, potueratis, potuerant.  
Fut. Potero, poteris, poterit: poterimus, poteritis, poterunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Possim,	possis,	possit:	possimus,	possitis,	possint.
<i>Imp.</i> Possem,	posses,	posset:	possemus,	possitis,	possent.
<i>Perf.</i> Potuerim,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.
<i>Plus.</i> Potuissem,	potuisses,	potuisset:	potuissemus,	potuissetis,	potuissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Potuero,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.

## INFINITIVUS.

*Præs.* Posse.*Perf.* Potuisse.

The rest wanting.

## E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, To go.

## INDICATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Eo,	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
<i>Imp.</i> Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
<i>Perf.</i> Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivimus,	ivistis,	{ iverunt, v. iverent.
<i>Plus.</i> Iveram,	iveras,	iverat;	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
<i>Fut.</i> Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Eam,	eas,	eat;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
<i>Imp.</i> Irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
<i>Perf.</i> Iverim,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
<i>Plus.</i> Ivisssem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivisssemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Iverò,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

## IMPERATIVUS.

## INFINITIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> { I,	ito;	{ ite,	eunto.
{ Ito,		{ itote,	

*Præs.* Ire.*Perf.* Ivisse.*Fut.* Iturum { esse.  
fuisse

## PARTICIPIA.

## SUPINA.

## GERUNDIA.

*Præs.* Iens, *Gen.* euntis.*Fut.* Iturus, -a, -um.

1. Itum.

2. Iru.

Eundum,

Eundi,

Eundo

NOTE, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That of old, Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect in *ibam* and Future in *ibo*, of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence* and some in *Virgil* and *Horace*.After the same manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, viz. *Adiabeo*, *exeo*, *obeo*, *redeo*, *subeo*, *pereo*, *cero*, *ineo*, *præeo*, *anteco*, *prodeo*, *præueo*, *transseo*; *Adibam*, *adibo*, *adiens*, *ademitis*, *adendum*, &c. But *ambulo* is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE

NOTE, That in the Compounds, *ivi, ivisti, &c.* are seldom used, but they are contracted into *ii, iisti*, as, *adii, adiisti*, and sometimes *adisti*: So *adieram, adierim, &c.*

QUEO, *I can*, and NEQUEO, *I cannot*, are conjugated the same way as EO; they only want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*; and the *Participles* are scarcely in Use.

V O L O.

Volo, volui, velle, *To will, or be willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

*Præs.* Volo, vis, vult; volumus, vultis, volunt.  
*Imp.* Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Perf.* Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.  
*Plus.* Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Fut.* Volam, voles, volet; volemus, voletis, volent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* Velim, velis, velit; velimus, velitis, velint.  
*Imp.* Vellem, velles, vellet; vellemus, velletis, vellent.  
*Perf.* Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plus.* Vol-issim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissim, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Vol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

*Præs.* Velle. *Perf.* Voluisse.  
*The rest are wanting.*

*Præs.* Volens.

N O L O.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

INDICATIVUS.

*Præs.* Nolo, non-vis, non-vult; nolumus, non-vultis, nolunt.  
*Imp.* Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Perf.* Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.  
*Plus.* Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Fut.* Nolam, noles, nolet; nolemus, noletis, nolent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* Nolim, nolis, nolit; nolimus, nolitis, nolint.  
*Imp.* Nollem, nolles, nollet; nollemus, nolletis, nollet.

*Perf.*

*Perf.* Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Plus.* Nol-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset; -uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.

*Fut.* Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

IMPERATIVUS. INFINITIVUS. PARTICIPIUM.

*Præs.* { Noli, { nolite, | *Præs.* Nolle. *Præs.* Nolens.  
 { Nolito: { nolitote. | *Perf.* Noluisse. *The rest wanting.*

M A L O.

Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

*Præs.* Malo, mavis, mavult; malumus, mavultis, malunt.

*Imp.* Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

*Perf.* Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.

*Plus.* Mal ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

*Fut.* Mal-am, -es, -et; &c. *This is scarcely in Use.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* Malim, malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malint.

*Imp.* Mallem, malle, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallent.

*Perf.* Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Plus.* Mal-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset; -uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.

*Fut.* Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

*Præs.* Malle.

*Perf.* Maluisse.

NOTE, That *Volo*, *Nolo*, and *Malo*, retain something of the Third Conjugation; for *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted of *Volis*, *volit*, *volitis*; and *o* is changed into *u*, for of old they said *Volt*, *voltis*.

*Nolo* is compounded of *non-volo*, and *Malo* of *magis-volo*.

F E R O.

VOX ACTIVA.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bear or suffer.*

INDICATIVUS.

*Præs.* Fero, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.

*Imp.* Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat; ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant.

*Perf.* Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, { tulerunt.  
 { tulere.

*Plus.* Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat; tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant.

*Fut.* Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

SUB-



SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.  
*Imp.* Ferrem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.  
*Perf.* Tul-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.  
*Plus.* Tul-issem, -isses, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.  
*Fut.* Tul-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

*Præs.* { Fer, fert; { ferte, ferunto.  
 { Fertor, fertor; { fertote,

INFINITIVUS.

*Præs.* Ferre.  
*Perf.* Tulisse.  
*Fut.* Latum esse vel fuisse.

PARTICIPIA. SUPINA.

*Præs.* Ferens.  
*Fut.* Laturus, -a, -am, { 1. Latum.  
 { 2. Latu.

GERUNDIA.

Ferendum,  
 Ferendi,  
 Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror, latus, ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

*Præs.* Feror, { feris, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.  
 { ferre,

*Imp.* Fer ebar, { -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.  
 { -ebare,

*Perf.* Latus sum vel fui, latus es vel fuisti, &c.

*Plus.* Latus eram vel fueram, latus eras vel fueras, &c.

*Fut.* Ferar, { fereris, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.  
 { ferere

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* Ferar, { feraris, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.  
 { ferare,

*Imp.* Ferrer, { ferreris, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.  
 { ferrere,

*Perf.* Latus sim vel fuerim, latus sis vel fueris, &c.

*Plus.* Latus essem vel fuisset, latus esses vel fuisses, &c.

*Fut.* Latus fuero, latus fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

*Præs.* { Ferre, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.  
 { Fertor,

INFINITIVUS.

*Præs.* Ferri.

*Perf.* Latum { esse.  
 { fuisse.

*Fut.* Latum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

*Perf.* Latus, -a, -um.

*Fut.* Ferendus, -a, -um.

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers, fert, fertis, fertis, ferite, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor*, being contracted of *Feris, feris, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, feritur* and *feritor*.

Also *Fer* is contracted of *ferere*: Which in like Manner has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, duc, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dice, ducere, face*.

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the same way as the Simple; as, *Afferro, attuli, allatum; Ansero, abstuli, ablatum; Differo, distuli, dilatum; Consero, contuli, collatum; Insero, intuli, illatum; Offero, obtuli, oblatum; Effero, extuli, elatum*: So *Circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, praefero, antefero, praefero*.

## F I O.

*Fio, factus, fieri, To be made, or to become.*

## INDICATIVUS.

*Præs.* *Fio, fis, fit; fimus, fitis, fiunt.*  
*Imp.* *Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.*  
*Perf.* *Factus sum vel fui, factus es vel fuisti, &c.*  
*Plus.* *Factus eram vel fueram, factus eras vel fueras, &c.*  
*Fut.* *Fiam, fies, fiet; fitemus, fietis, fient.*

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* *Fiam, fias, fiat; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.*  
*Imp.* *Fierem, fieres, fieret, fieremus, fieretis, fierent.*  
*Perf.* *Factus sim vel fuerim, factus sis vel fueris, &c.*  
*Plus.* *Factus essem vel fuisssem, factus esses vel fuisses, &c.*  
*Fut.* *Factus fuero, factus fueris, &c.*

## IMPERATIVUS.

*Præs.* { *Fi, fito; fite, fiunto.*  
           { *Fito, fito; fitote, fiunto.*

## INFINITIVUS.

*Pr.* *Fieri.*  
*Per.* *Factum esse, fuisset.*  
*Fut.* *Factum iri.*

## PARTICIPIA.

*Perf.* *Factus, -a, -um,*  
*Fut.* *Faciendus, -a, -um.*

## SUPINUM.

*Factu.*

¶ Tho' *Fi* is rejected by some Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it place here, not only because it is to be found in *Plautus*, but also in *Horace, Lib. 2. Sat. 5. vsr. 38. Fi cognitor ipse*, according to the best Missions and Editions.

NOTE, 1. That *Fio* is the Passive of *Facio*, To make, (which is regular) instead of *Facior*, which is not in use: Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i* are regular; as, *afficio*, *affectus*, *affici*; *perficio*, *perfectus*, *perfici*.

NOTE, 2. That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperative Act. *fac*, and their Passive Form (when used) *fio*; as, *Calefacio*, *lucrifacio*, *benefacio*; *calefac*, *calefio*, &c. But these compounded with a Preposition change the *a* into *i*, and have *fice* a d *facior*. There are some compounded of *facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the first Conjugation; as, *magnifico*, *significo*.

To the Irregular Verbs may be reduced *EDO*, to eat, which in some of its Parts falls in with the Verb *Sum*, thus:

IND. *Præs.* *Edo*, es, est; - - - estis, - - -  
SUB. *Imp.* *Essem*, esses, esset; essemus, essetis, essent.  
IMPERAT. *Es vel esto*, - - - *esto vel estote*. INFIN. *Esse*.

Likewise its Compounds *Comedo* comes, comeſt, &c. and *Exedo*, exes, exest, &c. But all these may likewise be regularly conjugated, *Edo*, *edis*, *edit*, &c. *Ederem*, *ederes*, *ederet*, &c.

## Of Defective Verbs.

THO' some of the Irregular Verbs already mentioned want some of their Parts, and upon that account may be called also *Defective Verbs*, yet by *DEFECTIVE Verbs* here we chiefly understand such as want considerable Branches, or are used only in few *Tenses* and *Persons*. We shall set down these that most frequently occur. I. *AIO*, I say; *INQUAM*, I say; *FOREM*, I should be; *AUSIM*, I dare; *FAXIM*, I'll see to it, or, I will do it; *AVE* and *SALVE*, God save you, Hail, Good-morrow; *CEDO*, tell or give me; *QUÆSO*, I pray.

IND. { *Præs.* *Aio*, ais, ait; - - - aiunt.  
          *Imp.* *Ai-ebam*, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
          *Perf.* - - - iſti, - - -  
SUB. [ *Præs.* - - - aias, aiatis; - - - aiatis, aiatis.  
          IMPERAT. ai. [PARTICIPLE *Præs.* aiens.]  
INDIC. { *Præs.* *Inquam*, inquis, inquit; inquit; inquit; inquit.  
          *Imp.* - - - inquebar; - - - inquebant.  
          *Perf.* - - - inquisti, - - -  
          *Ent.* - - - inquires, inquiet; - - -  
          IMPERAT. inque, -ito. [PARTICIPLE *Præs.* inquens.]

SUB. { *Imp.* } *Forem*, fores, foret; foremus, foretis, forent.  
          *Plus.*

INF. *Fore*, to be, or to be about to be, the same with *futurum esse*.

SUB. { *Præs.* *Ausim*, ausis, ausit; - - -  
          *Perf.* *Faxim*, faxis, faxit; - - - faxint.  
          *Ent.* *Faxo*, faxis, faxit; - - - faxint.

NOTE, That *faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

IMPERAT. { *Ave*, } *avete*. }  
          { *Av-to*, } *avetote*. }  
          { *Salve*, } *salvete*. }  
          { *Salvet*, } *salvetote*. }  
          { *Cedo*, } *cedite*. }  
INDIC. *Præs.* { *Quæſo*, } *quæſumus*. }

INFIN. { *avere*.  
          { *salvere*.

II. These three Verbs ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the *Preterite* Tense and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called *IRETENSIVE* Verbs; thus,

Odi, oderam, oderim, odissem, odero, odisse.

Memini, memineram, meminervim, meminissem, meminero, meminisse.

Cœpi, cœperam, cœperim, cœpisssem, cœpero, cœpisse.

But under these they comprehend also the Signification of the other Tenses as, *Memini*, I remember, or I have remembered; *Memineram*, I remembered, or I had remembered, &c. So *Odi*, I hate, or I have hated; *Cœpi*, I begin, or I have begun. Tho' I am not fully satisfied as to this last, for I do not know any Example where *Cœpi* doth clearly signify the Present Tense.

*Memini* hath also the Imperative *Memento*, Remember thou; *Memento* Remember ye. Some add *Meminens*, Remembering, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add *NOVI*, because it frequently hath the Signification of the Present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*; tho' it comes from *Novi* which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That *Odiens* is to be found in *Petronius*; *Odiatur* in *Seneca* *Cæpio* in *Plautus* and *Terence*. See *Vof. Analog. Lib. 3. Cap. 39.*

NOTE, 2. That the Participles *Cæptus* and *Osus*, with its Compounds *Perosus*, *exosus*, are in use among the best Authors; but *Perodi* and *Exodi* are not.

III. *Feris*, to speak, wants the first Person of the Present Indic. and perhaps the whole present of the *Subjunctive*, for we do not say *For*, or *Fer*, and rarely *Feris*, *Fetur*, &c. So likewise *Daris* and *Deris*, but not *Dor* or *Der*, to be given. The Compounds of the First, as, *Effor*, *Affor*, are rare, but the Compounds of the other, as *Addor*, *Reddor*, are common.

IV. Most of the other Defective Verbs are but single Words, and rarely to be found but among the Poets; as, *Infir*, he begins; *Desir*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *si*; as, *sis*, for *si vis*, if thou wilt; *sultis*, for *si vultis*, if ye will; *sodes*, for *si audes*, if thou darest.

### Of Impersonal Verbs.

These are also a Kind of *Defective* Verbs, which for the most part are used only in the *Third Person Sing.* They have the Sign *IT* before them in English; as, *pœnit*, it repents; *Placet*, it pleases; and are thus conjugated:

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plusquam.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
IND.	Pœnit	pœnitebat	pœnituit	pœnituerat	pœnitebit.
SUB.	Pœniteat	pœniteret	pœnituerit	pœnituiſſet	pœnituiſſet.
INF.	Pœnitere	- - -	pœnituiſſe.		

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice, especially such as otherwise have no Passive; as,

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plusquam.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
IND.	Pugnatur	pugnabatur	pugnatum est, fuit,	-atum	erit, fuerat, pugnabitur.
SUB.	Pugnetur	pugnaretur	pugnatum sit, fuerit,	-atum	esset, fuisset, -atum fuisset.
INF.	Pugnari	- - -	pugnatum esse, fuisse,	- - -	pugnatum iri.

NOTE



NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any Person or Number, by putting that which stands before other Verbs; after the Impersonals in the Cases which they govern, as *Panitet me, te, illum*, I repent, thou repentest, he repenteth, instead of *Ego Paniteo*, &c. which is scarcely Latin. *Placet mihi, tibi, illi*, It pleases me, thee, him; or, I please, thou pleasest, &c. *Pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.

NOTE, 2. That Impersonals are not used in the Imperative, but instead of we take the Subjunctive.

NOTE, 3. That Impersonal Verbs are very often used personally, especially in the Plural Number; as, *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, pertinet, Decet, Doler, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Praestat*, &c. For we say, *Tu mihi sola places; Illi noceo; Multa homini accidunt, contingunt, eveniunt; Parvum, parva nocent*, &c. But 'tis to be remarked that they are generally Impersonal, when Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood follows, for tho' I can say, *Tu places mihi*, yet I cannot say, *Si places audire*, but *Si placet tibi audire*. Again we cannot say, *Ego contigi esse domi*, but *Me contigit esse domi*, or *Mihi contigit esse domi*. Likewise *Evenit illum mori*, or *ut ille moreretur*; but not, *Ille evenit mori*.

I shall not here enquire what is the Word understood to Impersonal Verbs, whether it is a Noun of the like Signification; as, *Pugna pugnatur*, or the Word *Res* or *Negotium*, or the Infinitive Mood. Tho' I incline to think, that none of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the First, to others the Second, and to others the Third may be most fitly understood, the Nature of the Verb and good Sense shall direct us. This we are sure of, that the Word understood can never be a person properly so called, but a Thing; for which Reason, and the Want of the two primary Persons, viz. the First and Second, they are called Impersonal, tho' some are much offended with the Name.]

## C A P. IV.

### De Participio.

TRIA sunt praeipue considerata in Participio, scilicet *Tempus, Significatio & Declinatio*.

I. Tempora Participiorum sunt TRIA, *Præsens, Præteritum & Futurum*.

Præf.	Temp. de- clinant in	ns.
Præt.		tus, sus, xus.
Fut.		rus, dus.

II. Significatio Participiorum est vel *Activa*, vel *Passiva*, vel *Neutra*, ad modum verborum à quibus descendunt.

## C H A P. IV.

### Of Participle.

THere are three things especially to be considered in a Participle, viz. Time, Signification and Declension.

I. The Tenses of Participles are Three, the Present, Preterite and Future.

Participles of the	{	Præf.	{	ns.
		Præt.		tus, sus, xus.
		Fut.		rus, dus.

II. The Signification of Participles is either Active, or Passive, or Neuter, after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.

Participia { in *ns* and *rus* plerumque  
 • sunt *Activa*.  
 in *dus* semper *Passiva*.  
 in *tus, sus, xus*, plerum-  
 que sunt *Passiva*, interdum  
 verò *Activa*, vel  
 etiam *Communia*.

III. Omnia Participia sunt  
 Adjectiva : quæ definunt in  
*ns* sunt *Tertiæ Declinationis*,  
 reliqua autem omnia *primæ &*  
*Secundæ*.

Participles { in *ns* and *rus* are gene-  
 rally *Active*.  
 in *dus* always *Passive*.  
 in *tus, sus, xus*, are gene-  
 rally *Passive*, sometimes  
*Active*, or also *Com-*  
*mon*.

III. All Participles are Ad-  
 jectives: These which end in *ns*  
 are of the Third Declension,  
 but all the rest are of the First  
 and Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a Kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, which in  
 its Signification always imports some Time.

It is so called, because it *partakes* of a Noun and a Verb, having Gender  
 and Cases from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Number  
 from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [See Chap. IX.] have two Participles, one of the Pre-  
 sent Time ending in *ns*; as, *Amans*, Loving; and another of the Future end-  
 ing in *rus*; as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewise two Participles, one of the Preterite end-  
 ing in *tus, sus* or *xus*; as, *Amatus*, Loved; *Visus*, Seen; *Flexus*, Bowed;  
 (to which some add one in *us*, viz. *Mortuus*, Dead :) And another of the  
 Future ending in *dus*; as, *Amandus*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two Participles, as the Active; as, *Sedens*, Sit-  
 ting; *Sessurus*, About to sit.

4. Active INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three Participles;  
 as, *Carens*, Wanting; *Cariturus*, About to want; *Carendus*, To be wanted;  
*Dolens*, Grieving; *Deliturus*, About to grieve; *Dolendus*, To be grieved;  
 And sometimes four; as, *Vigilans*, Watching; *Vigilaturus*, About to watch;  
*Vigilatus*, Watched; *Vigilans*, To be watched.

5. DEPONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four Participles,  
 as, *Loquens*, Speaking; *Locuturus*, About to speak; *Locutus*, Having spoken;  
*Loquendus*, To be spoken; *Dignans*, Vouchsafing; *Dignaturus*, About to  
 vouchsafe; *Dignatus*, Having vouchsafed, or being vouchsafed; *Dignandus*,  
 To be vouchsafed.

NOTE, That in some Deponent verbs the Participle Perfect hath both an  
 Active and Passive Signification, tho' that of the Verb itself is only Active;  
 as, *Testatus*, Having testified, or being testified. So *Mentitus*, *Meditatus*,  
*Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, That it is essential to a Participle, I. That it come immediately  
 from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it also include Time. Therefore  
*Tinctus*, Coated; *Lavatus*, Masked, and such like, are not Participles,  
 because they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs. And *Ignarus*, Ignor-  
 ant; *Elegans*, neat; *Circumspectus*, circumspect; *Tacitus*, silent; *Falsus*,  
 false; *Profligatus*, Profligate, &c. are not Participles, because they do not sig-  
 nify Time.

Th  
 very  
 pulab  
 ficatio  
 signif  
 II. C  
 icles  
 Gellin

GE  
 Verbs  
 stantia  
 stra&  
 plete i  
 the F  
 which  
 Second  
 [Ve  
 Dative  
 of old  
 have s  
 ty Gra  
 after  
 Non f

De

I N  
 r  
 Signif  
 Adv  
 variæ  
 cipuæ  
 vocari

ADV  
 Noun,  
 Manner  
 I. Adv  
 and Ord

Ther

There are a Kind of Adjective Nouns ending in *UNDUS*, which approach very near to the Nature of *Participles*, such as *Errabundus*, *Ludibundus*, *Populabundus*. They are formed from the *Imperf.* of the *Indic.* and their Signification is much the same with the *Participle* of the *Present Time*; only they signify *Abundance* or a great deal of the *Action*, according to *A. Gellius*, lib. 11. Cap. 15. or, according to others, they signify the same with the *Participles* of *frequentative Verbs*, when these are not in use. See *Gronovius* on *Gellius*, as abovecited.

## APPENDIX of Gerunds and Supines.

*GERUNDS* and *SUPINES* (which because of their near Relation to Verbs are by some not improperly called *Participial Words*) are a Sort of *Substantive Nouns*, expressing the *Action* of the Verb in general, or in the *Abstract*. *GERUNDS* are *Substantives* of the second Declension, and complete in all their Cases except the *Vocative*. *SUPINES* are *Substantives* of the Fourth Declension, having only two Cases, the *Accusative* in *UM*, which makes the *First Supine*, and the *Ablative* in *U*, which makes the *Second*.

[*Vossius*, Lib. 8. Cap. 54. thinks, that the Last Supine may sometimes be a Dative; as, *Durum tactu*, i. e. *tactui*; for the Datives of the Fourth Declension of old ended in *u*. Also Lib. 7. Cap. 8. he takes Notice, that tho' these Supines have sometimes other Cases, (as *irrisui esse*) yet they are only reckoned Supines by Grammarians, when the First come after Verbs of Motion, and the Second after Adjective Nouns: Thus *dignus irrisu* is a Supine (according to them;) *Non sine irrisu audientium*, is not.]

## De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.

## CAP. V.

## De Adverbio.

**I**N ADVERBIO potissimum spectanda est ejus Significatio.

Adverbiorum Significationes variae sunt: earum verò præcipuæ ad sequentia capita revocari possunt.

## Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

## CHAP. V.

## Of Adverb.

**I**N an ADVERB is chiefly to be considered its Signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are various: But the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads.

ADVERB is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a Noun, Verb, or other Adverb, expresses some Circumstance, Quality or Manner of their Signification.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of Place, Time and Order.

1. Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold,  
viz. Adverbs signifying Motion.

(or Rest) (1) in a Place,	UBI?	Where?
	Hic,	Here.
	Illic,	} There.
	Istic,	
(2) to a Place,	Ibi,	} Within,
	Intus,	
	Foris,	} Without.
	Ubique,	
	Nusquam,	} Every where.
	Alicubi,	
	Alibi,	} No where.
	Ubivis,	
	Ibidem,	} Some where.
	Quo?	
(3) towards a Place,	Huc,	} Else where.
	Illuc,	
	Isthuc,	} Any where.
	Intro,	
	Foras,	} In the same place.
	Eo,	
	Alio,	} Whither?
	Aliquo,	
	Eodem,	} Hither.
	Quorsum?	
(4) from a Place,	Versus,	} Thither.
	Horsum,	
	Ilorsum,	} To within.
	Sorsum,	
	Deorsum,	} To without.
	Antrorsum,	
	Retrorsum,	} To that Place.
	Dextrorsum,	
	Sinistrorsum,	} To another place.
	Unde?	
(5) through or by a place,	Hinc,	} To some Place.
	Ilinc,	
	Isthinc,	} To the same place.
	Inde,	
	Aliunde,	} Whitherward?
	Alicunde,	
	Sicunde,	} Towards.
	Utrinque,	
	Superne,	} Higherward.
	Inferne,	
(5) through or by a place,	Cœlitus,	} Thitherward.
	Funditus,	
	Qua?	} Upward.
	Hac,	
	Ilac,	} Downward.
	Isthac,	
	Alia,	} Forward.
		} Backward.

2. Adverbs of TIME are threefold  
viz. such as signify,

1. Pre-sent.	(1) Bring in Time, either	Nunc,	Now.
		Hodie,	To Day.
		Tunc,	} Then.
		Tum,	
		Heri,	} Yesterday.
		Dudum,	
		Pridem,	} Heretofore.
		Pridie,	
		Nudiustertius,	} The day before.
		Nuper,	
2. Past,		Jamjam,	3 Days ago.
		Mox,	Lately.
		Statim,	Presently.
		Protinus,	Immediately.
		Illico,	By and by.
		Cras,	Instantly.
		Postridie,	Straightway.
		Perendie,	To Morrow.
		Nondum,	The day after.
		Quando?	Two days hence.
3. Future,		Aliquando,	Not yet.
		Nonnunquam,	When?
		Interdum,	} Sometimes.
		Semper,	
		Nunquam,	Ever.
		Interim,	Never.
		Quotidie,	In the mean time.
			Daily.
			(2) Continuance of Time.
4. Indefinite,		Diu,	Long.
		Quamdiu?	How long?
		Tamdiu,	So long.
		Jamdiu,	} Long ago.
		Jamdudum,	
		Jampridem,	(3) Vicissitude or Repetition of Time.
			How often?
			Often.
			Seldom.
1. Indefinite,			So often.
			For several times.
			By Turns.
			Again.
			Ever and anon.
			Once.
			Twice.
			Thrice.
			Four times, &c.
			3. Adv.



3. Adverbs of ORDER; as,

Inde,	Then.	Deinceps,	So forth.	Primò	-um, First.
Deinde,	Hereafter.	Denuo,	Of new.	Secundò	-um, Secondly.
Dehinc,	Henceforth.	Denique,	Finally.	Tertio	-um, Thirdly.
Porro,	Moreover.	Postremo,	Lastly.	Quartò	-um, Fourthly.

II. The other Adverbs expressing QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either Absolute, or Comparative.

1. QUALITY simply; as, Bene, well; male, ill; fortiter, bravely: And innumerable others that come from Adjective Nouns or Participles.
2. CERTAINTY; as, Profectò, certè, sanè, planè, nò, utique, ita, etiam, truly, verily, yes; quidni, why not? omnino, certainly.
3. CONTINGENCE; as, Fortè, forsan, fortassis, fors, happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. NEGATION; as, Non, haud, not; nequaquam, not at all; ne-tiquam, by no means; minime, nothing less.
5. PROHIBITION; as, Ne, not.
6. SWEARING, as, Hercle, pol, edepol, mecastor, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.
7. EXPLAINING; as, Utpotè, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum, nempe, to wit, namely.
8. SEPARATION; as, Seorsum, a part; separatim, separately; figillatim, one by one; viritim, Man by Man; oppidatim, Town by Town, &c.
9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, Simul, unà, pariter, together; generaliter, generally; universaliter, universally; plerumque, for the most part.
10. INDICATION or POINTING at; as, En, ecce, lo, behold.
11. INTERROGATION; as, Cur, quare, quàmobrem, why, wherefore? Num, an, whether? Quomodo, quì, how? To which add, Ubi, quo, quorsum, unde, qua, quando, quamdiu, quoties.
1. EXCESS; as, Valde, maxime, magnopere, summopere, admodum, oppidò, perquam, longe, very much, exceedingly; nimis, nimium, too much; prorsus, penitus, omnino, altogether, wholly; magis, more; melius, better; pejus, worse; fortius, more bravely; And optime, best; pessimè, worst; fortissimè, most bravely; and innumerable others of the Comparative and Superlative Degrees.
2. DEFECT; as, Fermè, ferè, propè, propemodum, penè, almost; parum, little; paullo, paullulum, very little.
3. PREFERENCE; as, potius, satius, rather; potissimum, præcipuè, præsertim, chiefly, especially; imò, yes, nay, nay rather.
4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, Ita, sic, adeo, so; ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi, as, as if; quemadmodum, even as; satis, enough; itidem, in like manner.
5. UNLIKE NESS or INEQUALITY; as, Aliter, secus, otherwise; alioqui, or alioquin, else; nedum, much more, or much less.
6. ABATEMENT; as, Sentim, paullatim, pedetentim, by degrees, piece-meal; vix, scarcely; ægre, hardly, with difficulty.
7. EXCLUSION; as, Tantum, solum, modò, tantummodò duntaxat, demum, only.



Cis,	}	On this Side.	Propter,	For, hard by.
Citra,			Per,	By, through.
Circa,	}	About.	Præter,	Besides, except.
Circum,			Penes,	In the Power of.
Erga,		Towards.	Post,	After.
Extra,		Without.	Pone,	Behind.
Inter,		Between, among.	Secus,	By, along.
Intra,		Within.	Secundum,	According to.
Infra,		Beneath.	Supra,	Above.
Juxta,		Nigh to.	Trans,	On the farther side.
Ob,		For.	Ultra,	Beyond.

II. Præpositiones quæ regunt Ablativum sunt quindecim, nempe,

A,	}	From.
Ab,		
Abs,		
Abque,		Without.
Cum,		With.
Clam,		Without the Knowledge of.
Coram,		Before.

III. Hæ quatuor interdum Accusativum, interdum Ablativum regunt,

In,	In, into.
Sub,	Under.

II. The Prepositions which govern the Ablative are Fifteen, viz.

De,	}	<i>Of, concerning.</i>
E,		<i>Of, out of.</i>
Ex,		
Pro,		<i>For,</i>
Præ,		<i>Before.</i>
Palam,		<i>With the knowledge of.</i>
Sine,		<i>Without.</i>
Tenus,		<i>Up to.</i>

III. These Four govern sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Ablative,

Super,	Above.
Subter,	Beneath.

A PREPOSITION is an indeclinable Word, shewing the Relation of one Substantive Noun to another.

NOTE, That *Pone* and *Secus* rarely occur; and *Prope*, nigh; *Usque*, unto; *Circiter*, about; *Versus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the Prepositions governing the Accusative; and *Procul*, far, among those governing the Ablative, are Adverbs; and do not govern a Case of themselves, but by the Preposition *ad*, which is understood to the first four, and *a* or *ab*, to the last. To which perhaps may be added *Clam*, which is joined very frequently with the Accusative; as, *Clam patre*, or *patrem*; *a* being understood to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

Besides the separate Use of these PREPOSITIONS, there is another Use arises from them, namely, their being put before a vast Number of Nouns, and Verbs in Composition, which creates a great Variety, and gives a peculiar Elegance and Beauty to the Latin Tongue.

There

There are five or six *Syllables*, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, CON, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in *Compound Words*. However they generally add something to the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am	} signifies	{	round about,	} as	{	ambio,	to surround
Di			asunder,			divello,	to pull asunder.
Dis			again,			distraho,	to draw asunder.
Re			aside or apart,			relego,	to read again.
Se			together,			sepono,	to lay aside.
Con						concrelesco,	to grow together.

## C H A P. VII.

## Of Interjection.

**A**N INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown into Discourse, to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

- Some of them express,*
1. JOY; as, Evax, hey, brave, io.
  2. GRIEF; as, Ah, hei, eheu, heu, ah, alas, woe me.
  3. WONDER; as, Papæ, O strange; Vah, hah.
  4. PRAISE; as, Euge, well done.
  5. AVERSION; as, apage, away, begone, phy, wsh.
  6. EXCLAIMING; as, Oh, Proh! O.
  7. SURPRIZE or FEAR; as, Atar, ha, aha.
  8. IMPRECATION; as, Væ, wo, pox on't.
  9. LAUGHTER; as, Ha, ha, he.
  10. SILENCING; as, Au, 't, pax, Silence, hush, 'st.
  11. CALLING; as, Eho, io, ho, so, ho, ho, O.
  12. DERISION; as, Hui, away with.
  13. ATTENTION; as, Hem, hah.

NOTE, 1. That the same *Interjection* denotes sometimes one Passion and sometimes another; as, *Vah*, which is used to express Joy, and Sorrow, and Wonder, &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are *natural Sounds*, common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That *Nouns* are used sometimes for *Interjections*; as, *Malum!* With a Pox! With a Mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! ty, fy! *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the Villany!

INTERJECTION is a compendious Way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word; and used only to represent the Passions and Emotions of the Soul, that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express the Suddenness and Quickness of the other.

## C H A P. VIII.

## Of Conjunction.

**A** CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word that joins Sentences together; and thereby shews their Dependance upon one another.

O  
1. COPY  
tum  
ther.  
2. DISJ  
3. CON  
alho  
4. ADV  
attam  
5. CAS  
canse  
6. ILLA  
therefo  
seeing.  
7. FINA  
8. CON  
conditi  
9. EXC  
10. DIM  
11. SUS  
ne, an  
12. EXP  
13. OR  
moreov  
14. DEC  
namely  
NOTE  
are both  
junctions  
and Decl  
der Adv  
monly c  
nothing  
ir, and o  
perdat; S  
great Ne  
NOTE  
of Conjun  
&c. Wh  
is the Pr  
NOTE  
stand first  
natural C  
enim: An  
eternim, s  
into Prep



## Part II. Chap. VIII. of Conjunction. 69

Of these some are called,

1. COPULATIVE; *as*, Et, ac, atque, que, *and*; etiam, quoque, item, *also*; tum, cum, *both*, *and*. Also their *Contraries*, Nec, neque, neu, neve, *neither*, *nor*.
2. DISJUNCTIVE; *as*, Aut, ve, vel, seu, five, *either*, *or*.
3. CONCESSIVE; *as*, Etſi, etiamſi, tamenſi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, *tho'*, *al tho'*, *albeit*.
4. ADVERSATIVE; *as*, Sed, verum, autem, at, aſt, atqui, *but*; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verum enim vero, *yet*, *notwithstanding*, *nevertheleſs*.
5. CASUAL; *as*, Nam, namque, enim, *for*; quia, quippe, quoniam, *be- cause*; quod, *that* *because*.
6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; *as*, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, *therefore*; quapropter, quocirca, *wherefore*; proinde, *therefore*; cum, quum, *ſeeing*, *ſince*; quandoquidem, *forasmuch as*.
7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; *as*, Ut, uti, *that*, *to the end that*.
8. CONDITIONAL; *as*, Si, ſin, *if*; dum, modo, dummodo, *provided*, *upon condition that*; ſiquidem, *if indeed*.
9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; *as*, Ni, niſi, *unleſs*, *except*.
10. DIMINUTIVE; *as*, Saltem, certe, *at leaſt*.
11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; *as*, An, anne, num, *whether*; ne, annon, *whether*, *not*; necne, *or not*.
12. EXPLETIVE; *as*, Autem, vero, *now*, *truly*; quidem, equidem, *indeed*.
13. ORDINATIVE; *as*, Deinde, *thereafter*; denique, *finally*; inſuper, *moreover*; ceterum, *moreover*, *but*, *however*.
14. DECLARATIVE; *as*, Videlicet, ſcilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c. *to wit*, *namely*.

NOTE, 1. That the ſame Words, as they are taken in different Views, are both *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*; *as*, An, anne, &c. are *Suſpensive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs*. The ſame may be ſaid of the *Ordinative* and *Declarative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be ranked under *Adverbs* of *Order* and *Explaining*. So likewiſe *Utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb* of *Wiſhing*, when more narrowly conſidered, is nothing elſe but the *Conjunction Uti* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, and *opto* [I wiſh] underſtood; *as*, *Utinam adſuiſſes*; *Ut te Deus male perdat*; *Supple Opto*. But ſince both of them are indeclinable, there is no great Need of being very nice in diſtinguiſhing them.

NOTE, 2. That other Parts of Speech compounded together ſupply the Place of *Conjunctions*; *as*, *Poſtea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, *because*, &c. Which are made up of the *Prepoſitions poſt, præter* and *propter*, with *ea* the *Pronoun*.

NOTE, 3. That ſome *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER, ſtand firſt in a Sentence; *as*, *Et, aut, nec, ſi*, &c. Some, contrary to their natural Order, ſtand in the ſecond Place, *viz. Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: And ſome may indifferently be put either firſt or ſecond, *viz. Namque, etenim, ſiquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque*, &c. Hence aroſe the *Division* of them into *Prepoſitive Subjunctive* and *Common*.

## C H A P. IX.

APPENDIX, containing some Observations concerning the various Divisions and Significations of Words, especially *Noun* and *Verb*.

1. **A**LL Words whatsoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A **SIMPLE** Word [*Simplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *Justus, lego*. A **COMPOUND** [*Compositum*] is that which is made up of two or more Words, or of a Word and some Syllabical Adjections; as, *Injustus, per-lego, derelinquo, egomet*.

2. All Words whatsoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A **PRIMITIVE** Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as, *Justus, lego*. A **DERIVATIVE** [*Derivativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as, *Justitia, lectio*.

I. Besides the more general Divisions of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned Pag. 5, and 22. there are other particular Divisions of them taken from their various Significations and Derivations: The most remarkable whereof are these;

## I. With Respect to Signification.

1. A **COLLECTIVE** [*Collectivum*] is a Substantive Noun which signifies many in the singular Number; as, *Populus*, a People; *exercitus*, an Army.

2. An **INTERROGATIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] is that by which we ask a Question, as, *Quis?* Who? *Uter?* Which of the two? *Qualis?* Of what kind? *Quantus?* How great? *Quot?* How many? And these, when they are used without a Question, are called **INDEFINITES**.

3. A **RELATIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective that has Respect to something spoken before; as, *Qui, ille, ipse*, &c. *Alius, alter, reliquus, cetera, -um, qualis, quantus*, &c.

4. A **PARTITIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis, nullus, quisque*, &c. or a Part of many; as, *Quidem, aliquis, neuter, nemo*, &c.

5. A **NUMERAL** Noun [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which signifies Number (of which there are four principal Kinds:)

(1) **CARDINAL**, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Unus, duo, tres*, &c.

(2) **ORDINAL**, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Primus, secundus, tertius*, &c.

(3) **DISTRIBUTIVE**, [*Distributivus*]; as, *Singuli, bini, terni*, &c.

(4) **MULTIPLICATIVE**, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex, duplex, triplex*, &c.

## II. With Respect to Signification and Derivation.

1. A **PATRONYMICK** Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Substantive Noun derived from another Substantive proper, signifying one's Pedigree or Extraction; as, *Priamides*, the Son of *Priamus*; *Priamis*, the Daughter of *Priamus*; *Aetias*, the Daughter of *Aetes*; *Nerine*, the Daughter of *Nereus*. *Patronymicks* are generally derived from the Name of the Father, but the Poets (for others seldom use them) derive them also from the Grandfather, or some other remarkable Person of the Family; nay sometimes from the Founder of a Nation or People, and also from Countries or Cities; as, *Aeacides*, the Son, Grand-son, Great Grand-son, or one of the Posterity of *Aeacus*; *Romulida*, the Romans, from their first King *Romulus*; *Sicelis*, Troas,

a Woman  
in is, as  
as of the

2. An  
Adjective  
to the T  
Sweetness  
the Adje  
besides th  
without v

3. A C  
jective de  
Scotus, M  
Macedonia  
Edimburg

4. A K  
Substantiv  
as, Scoticu  
land, Herc  
Hermis, Fa

5. A D  
derived fro  
mation, or  
ula, a litt  
ulus, ver

for the mo  
der with  
6. A D  
jective der

Senator, a  
ans, huma

7. A V  
a Verb; a  
Hearing;

Volucer, h  
8. Lastly  
Prepositions

Contrarius,  
NOTE,

they are co  
der another

lative, or

II.

1. DEM

2. REL

3. POSS

4. PAT

Of  
III. I. V  
4. Amo, I  
a Wo

## Part II. Chap. IX. of Appendix, &c. 71

a Woman of *Sicily*, of *Troy*, &c. *Patronymicks* of Men end in *des*; of Women in *is*, *as* and *ne*. These in *des* and *ne* are of the *First*, and these in *is* and *as* of the *Third* Declension.

2. An **ABSTRACT** Noun [*Abstractum*] is a Substantive derived from an Adjective expressing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without Regard to the Thing in which the Quality is; as, *Bonitas*, Goodness; *Dulcedo*, Sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With Respect to these Abstracts, the Adjectives from which they come are called **CONCRETES**, because, besides the Quality they also confusedly signify something as the Subject of it, without which they cannot make Sense.

3. A **GENTILE** or **PATRIAL** Noun [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive Proper, signifying one's Country; as, *Scotus*, *Macedo*, *Arpinas*, *Edimburgensis*, *Taodunanus*, a Man born in *Scotland*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgh*, *Dundee*; from *Scotia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edimburgum*, *Taodunum*.

4. A **POSSESSIVE** Noun [*Possessivum*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive whether Proper or Appellative, signifying Possession or Property; as, *Scoticus*, *Herculeus*, *Paternus*, *Herilis*, *Famineus*, of or belonging to *Scotland*, *Hercules*, a Father, a Master, a Woman; from *Scotia*, *Hercules*, *Pater*, *Herns*, *Famina*.

5. A **DIMINUTIVE** Noun [*Diminutivum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Substantive or Adjective respectively, importing a Diminution, or Lessening of its Signification; as, *Libellus*, a little Book; *Chartula*, a little Paper; *Opusculum*, a little Work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*: *Parvulus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parvus*, *candidus*. These for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the same Gender with their Primitives.

6. A **DENOMINATIVE** Noun [*Denominativum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia*, Favour; *Vinea*, a Vineyard; *Senator*, a Senator; from *gratus*, *vinum*, *senex*: *Cælestis*, Heavenly; *Humanius*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *cælum*, *homo*, *Aurum*.

7. A **VERBAL** Noun [*Verbale*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from a Verb; as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Lectio*, a Lesson; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *Amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio*: *Amabilis*, lovely; *Capax*, capable; *Velux*, swift; from *Amo*, *capto*, *volo*.

8. Lastly, There are some Nouns derived from *Participles*, *Adverbs* and *Prepositions*; as, *Fiditius*, counterfeit; *Crastinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *Contrarius*, contrary; from *Fidus*, *cras*, *contra*.

NOTE, That the same Nouns, according to the different Respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the abovementioned Classes; as, *Quis* is an *Interrogative*, *Relative*, or *Partitive*; *Pietas* an *Abstract* or *Denominative*.

II. *Pronouns* are divided into four Classes, *viz.*

1. **DEMONSTRATIVES**, *Ego*, *tus*, *sui*.

2. **RELATIVES**, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.

3. **POSSESSIVES**, *Mens*, *tuns*, *sans*, *noſter*, *veſter*.

4. **PATRIALS** or **GENTILES**, *Noſtras*, *veſtras*, *cujas*.

Of them also two are **INTERROGATIVES**, *Quis* and *cujas*.

III. 1. Verbs with Respect to their *Figure* or *Frame* are either **SIMPLE**;

1. *Amo*, I love: OR **COMPOUND**; as, *Redamo*, I love again.

2. With

2. With Respect to their *Species* or *Origin*, are either PRIMITIVE; as, *Lego*, I read: Or DERIVATIVE; as, *Lectito*, I read frequently.

3. With Respect to their *Conjugation*, are either REGULAR; as, *Amo*: Or IRREGULAR; as, *Volo*, *vis*, &c.

4. With Respect to their *Constituent Parts*, are either COMPLETE; as, *Amo*: Or DEFECTIVE; as, *Inquam*: Or REDUNDANT; as, *Edo*, *edis*, and *es*, &c.

5. With Respect to their *Persons*, are either PERSONAL; as, *Amo*: Or IMPERSONAL; as, *Ponitet*.

6. With Respect to their *Terminations*, they end either in O; as, *Amo*: Or in R; as, *Amar*: Or in M; as, *Sum*.

7. With Respect to their *Signification*, Verbs are either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

(1) A SUBSTANTIVE Verb [*Substantivum*] is that which signifies simply the Affirmation of Being or Existence; as, *Sum*, *sis*, *existo*, I am.

(2) An ADJECTIVE Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own; as, *Amo*: i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active*, *Passive* and *Neuter*.

[1] An ACTIVE Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

[2] A PASSIVE Verb [*Passivum*] is that which affirms Passion of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amor*.

[3] A NEUTER Verb [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Passion of its Nominative; but simply signifies the State, Posture, or Quality of Things; as, *Sto*, *sedeo*, *maneo*, *daro*, *vireo*, *flaveo*, *sapio*, *quiesco*, &c. To stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wise, to rest.

An *Active* Verb is again divided into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

[1] An *Active* TRANSITIVE Verb [*Transitivum*] is that whose Action passeth from the Agent to some other Thing; as, *Amo patrem*.

[2] An *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verb [*Intransitivum*] is that whose Action passeth not from the Agent to any other; as, *Curro*, I run; *ambulo*, I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Question WHOM? or WHAT? if a rational Answer can be returned, the Verb is *Transitive*; as, *Whom*, or *what do you teach?* Answ. *A Boy, the Grammar*: If not it is *Intransitive*; as, *What do you run, go, come, live, sleep, &c.* to which no rational Answer can be given, unless it be by a Word of like Signification, which sometimes indeed these Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleasant Life; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long Journey.

NOTE, 1. That the same Verb is sometimes *Transitive*, and sometimes *Intransitive*; as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, to begin an Action, *Plaut*.

NOTE, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs are often Englished with the Signs of a *Passive* Verb; as, *Caleo*, I am hot; *Palleo*, I am pale; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs want the *Passive* Voice, unless impersonally used, as the *Intransitive* Verbs most frequently and elegantly are; as, *pugnatur*, *iter*, *ventum est*.

Tho' all Verbs whatsoever, with Respect to their Signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing Classes, yet because Grammarians together



ther with the Signification of Verbs, are obliged also to consider their Termination, and finding that all Active Verbs did not end in *o*, neither all Passives in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former, two or three other Classes or Kinds of them, viz. *Deponent*, *Common* and *Neuter-passive*.

[1] A DEPONENT Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a Passive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification, as, *Loquor*, I speak; *morior*, I die.

[2] A COMMON Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a Passive Termination has a Signification either Active or Passive; as, *Criminor*, I accuse, or I am accused; *Dignor*, I think, or I am thought worthy.

[3] A NEUTER-PASSIVE [*Neutro passivum*] is that which is half Active and half Passive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Passive; as, *Fio*, *factus sum*, to be made: Or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Audeo*, *ausus sum*, to dare; *Gaudeo*, *gavisus sum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kinds of Derivative Verbs, which are not very material, there are three Kinds of them derived from Verbs, which deserve to be remarked, viz. *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

[1] FREQUENTATIVES [*Verba Frequentativa*] signify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the last Supine, by changing *atu* into *ito*, from Verbs of the first, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the first; as, *Clamito*, to cry frequently, from *clamo*; *dormito*, to sleep often, from *dormio*. From them also are formed other Frequentatives; as, *Curro*, *cursum*, *cursito*; *jacio*, *jactum*, *jactito*; *pello*, *pulsus*, *pulsito* and *pulto*.

[2] INCEPTIVES [*Verba Inceptiva*] signify that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the 2<sup>d</sup> Perf. Sing. Pres. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the Third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Caleo*, *cales*, *calesco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3] DESIDERATIVES [*Verba Desiderativa*] signify a Desire of Action. They are formed from the last Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Canturio*, I desire to sing; *Esurio*, I am hungry, or I desire to eat.

9. Lastly, in Construction Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as *Vocative* Verbs, or Verbs of naming, Verbs of remembering, or want, of teaching, of accusing, &c.

In the preceding Division of Verbs with respect to their Signification, I have receded a little from the common Method; and in particular I have given a different Account of Neuter Verbs from that commonly received by Grammarians, who comprise under them all Intransitive Verbs, tho' their Significations be never so much Active. But this I did partly from the Reason of the Name, which imports a Negation both of Action and Passion, and partly to give a distinct View of the Signification of Verbs, without regard to their Terminations, which in that Respect are purely accidental and arbitrary.

I have also excluded from the Divisions of Verbs those called NEUTRAL PASSIVES, [*Lat. Neutra passiva*] because originally they are Active Verbs; for the primary Signification of *vapulo*, is *pereo* or *ploro*; of *exulo*, *extra solum eo*; of *veneo*, *venum eo*; of *nubo*, *velo*. *Liceo* indeed is a very singular Verb, for in the Active Voice it signifies passively, and in the passive actively.

## PARS TERTIA.

## PART THIRD.

De Sententiis, five Orat-  
tione.Of Sentences, or  
Speech.

**S**ENTENTIA est quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata; ut, *Tu legis; Tu legis libros; Tu legis libros bonos; Tu legis libros bonos domi (a).*

**A** SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind, expressed by two or more Words put together; as, *You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.*

## CAP. I.

## CHAP. I.

De Syntaxi, five Constructione.

Of Syntax, or Construction.

**S**YNTAXIS est recta vocum in Oratione Compositio.

Ejus partes sunt duæ, Concordantia & Regimen (b).

**S**YNTAX is the right ordering of Words in Speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord and Government.

(a) We are now arrived at the principal Part of Grammar; for the great End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of little Use to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to Practice, and make them answer the great Purposes for which they are intended. To the Attainment of this End there are two Things absolutely necessary, viz. I. That in Speech we dispose and frame our Words, according to the Laws and Rules established among those whose Language we speak. II. That in like Manner we know what is spoken or written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and resolve it into the several Parts of which it is made up. The first of these is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the second is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The first shews us how to speak the Language ourselves; and the second, how to understand it when spoken by others. But it must be owned, that there is such a necessary Connection between them, that he that is Master of the first, cannot be ignorant of the second.

(b) NOTE, I. That the Difference between Concord and Government consists chiefly in this, that in Concord there can no Change be made in the Accidents that is, Gender, Case, Number or Person of the one, but the like Change must also be made in the other: But in Government, the last Word (if declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the second. In Concord, the first Word may be called the Word directing, and the second the Word directed: In Go-

vern-

C  
dict  
in q  
R  
regit

I  
C  
i  
tivo.

2  
vo.  
3-  
dente.  
4-  
tivo.

A  
S  
mero

a V  
a Fa  
b D

vernment  
versed.

NOTE  
noted the  
[a] and  
reflected or  
Governing  
Directed

Number  
Question  
is the Sub  
covers the

NOTE,  
factive;  
Homo being

NOTE,  
understood  
it were a  
Thing. Bo

*Concordantia est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.*

*Regimen est quando dictio regit certum casum.*

*Concord is when one Word agrees with another in some Accidents.*

*Government is when a Word governs a certain Case.*

I. De Concordantia.

**C**oncordantia est quadruplex.

1. *Adjectivi cum Substantivo.*
2. *Verbi cum Nominativo.*
3. *Relativi cum Antecedente.*
4. *Substantivi cum Substantivo.*

REGULA I.

**A**djectivum concordat cum Substantivo in genere, numero & casu; ut,

- <sup>a</sup> Vir <sup>b</sup> bonus.  
<sup>a</sup> Fœmina <sup>b</sup> casta.  
<sup>b</sup> Dulce <sup>a</sup> pomum.

I. Of Concord.

**C**oncord is Fourfold.

1. *Of an Adjective with a Substantive.*
2. *Of a Verb with a Nominative.*
3. *Of a Relative with an Antecedent.*
4. *Of a Substantive with a Substantive.*

RULE I.

**A**n Adjective agrees with a Substantive in Gender, Number and Case; as,

- A good Man.  
 A chaste Woman.  
 A sweet Apple.

H 2

REG.

government the first is called the Word Governing, and the second the Word governed.

NOTE, 2. That for the greater Ease both of Master and Scholar, we have noted these Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with the Letters [a] and [b]; the Word *Directing* or *Governing* with [a] and the Word *Directed* or *Governed* with [b]; or where there are two Words *Directing* or *Governing*, the first with [a], and the second with [aa]; and where two Words *Directed* or *Governed*, the first with [a], and the second with [bb].

NUMBER I. NOTE, I. That the Way to find out the *Substantive* is to ask the Question WHO, or WHAT? to the *Adjective*; for that which answers to it is the *Substantive*. And the same Question put to the *Verb* or *Relative*, discovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent*.

NOTE, 2. That another *Adjective* sometimes supplies the Place of a *Substantive*; as, *Amicus certus*, a sure Friend. *Bona ferina*, Good Venison. *Homo* being understood to *Amicus*, and *Cara* to *Ferina*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Substantive* THING [*Negotium*] is most frequently understood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the *Nenter Gender*, as if it were a *Substantive*; as, *Triste* [supple *Negotium*] i. e. *Res tristis*, a sad Thing. *Bona* [supple *Negotia*] i. e. *Res bona*, good Things.

## REG. II.

2 VERBUM concordat cum Nominativo ante se in numero & persona; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Ego <sup>b</sup> lego.

<sup>a</sup> Tu <sup>b</sup> scribis.

<sup>a</sup> Preceptor <sup>b</sup> docet.

## RULE II.

A VERB agrees with the Nominative before it in Number and Person; as,

I read.

You write.

The Master teacheth.

## ANNOTATIONES.

3 1. VERBA Substantiva Vocandi & Gestus habent utrinque Nominativum ad eandem rem pertinentem; ut,

<sup>b</sup> Ego <sup>a</sup> sum <sup>bb</sup> discipulus.

<sup>b</sup> Tu <sup>a</sup> vocaris <sup>bb</sup> Joannes.

<sup>b</sup> Illa <sup>a</sup> incedit <sup>bb</sup> Regina.

4 2. EXCEP. Infinitivus Modus Accusativum ante se habet; ut,

Gaudeo <sup>b</sup> te <sup>a</sup> valere.

1. Substantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming and Gesture have a Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the same thing; as,

I am a Scholar.

You are named John.

She walks [as] a Queen.

2. EXCEP. The Infinitive Mood has an Accusative before it; as,

I am glad that you are well.

3. ESSE

Nam. 2. NOTE, That the Infinitive Mood frequently supplies the Place of the Nominative; as, *Mentiri non est meum*, To lie is not mine, [or my Property.]

Nam. 3. 1. Substantive Verbs are *Sum*, *sio*, *forem* and *existo*.

2. Verbs of Naming are these Passives, *Appellor*, *dicor*, *vocor*, *nominor*, *nuncupor*; to which add, *Videor*, *existimor*, *creor*, *constitutor*, *salutor*, *designor*, &c.

3. Verbs of Gesture are *Eo*, *intedo*, *venio*, *cuo*, *sio*, *sedeo*, *evado*, *fugio*, *dormio*, *somnio*, *maneo*, &c.

NOTE, That any Verb may have after it the Nominative, when it belongs to the same Thing with the Nominative before it; as, *Audiui hoc puer*, I heard it being [or when I was] a Boy. *Defendi Rempublicam adolescens*, non *deseram senex*, I defended the Commonwealth [when I was] a young Man, I will not desert it [now that I am] old, *Cic*.

Nam. 4. NOTE, That when the Particle THAT [in Lat. QUOD, or UT] comes between two Verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the Nominative Case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood; as, *Atunt Regem adventare*, They say [that] the King is coming; rather than, *Atunt quod Rex adventat*. *Turpe est eos qui bene nati sunt turpiter vivere*, 'Tis a shameful thing, that they who are well born should live basely; rather than, *Ut in turpiter vivant*. See Pag. 43.



Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 77

3. *ESSE* habet eundem casum post se quam ante se; ut,

*Petrus cupit a esse<sup>bb</sup> vir doctus.*

*Scio b Petrum a esse<sup>bb</sup> virum doctum.*

*Mibi<sup>bb</sup> negligentia esse non licet.*

REG. III.

\* **R**ELATIVUM *Qui, quæ, quod*, concordat cum Antecedente in genere & numero; ut,

*a Vir sapit b qui pauca loquitur.*

1. Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit verbo Nominativus; ut,

3. *ESSE* hath the same Case after it that it hath before it; as,

Peter desires to be a learned Man.

I know that Peter is a learned Man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

RULE III.

**T**HE Relative *Qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with the Antecedent in Gender and Number; as,

He is a wise Man who speaks little.

1. If no Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative to the Verb; as,

H 3

Pice.

*Num. 5. NOTE, 1.* That we frequently say, *Licet nobis esse bonos*, We may be good. *Tibi expedit esse sedulum*, 'Tis expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuisse pium*, It never hurted any Man that it hath been pious. But then the Accusative *Nos, te, illum*, &c. is understood; thus, *Licet nobis [nos] esse bonos*, &c.

*NOTE, 2.* That if *Esse*, and the other Infinitives of Substantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming, &c. have no Accusative or Dative before them, the Word that follows (whether Substantive or Adjective) is to be put in the Nominative; as, *Dicitur esse vir*; He is said to be a Man. *Non videtur esse facturus*; He seems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante suum vitium*; No Man should be called happy before his Death.

*Num. 6. NOTE, 1.* That the Antecedent is a Substantive Noun that goes before the Relative, and is again understood to the Relative. Wherefore it will not be amiss to teach the Scholar to supply it every where; thus, *Beware of Idleness, which [Idleness] is an Enemy to Vertue*. *Cave Segnitiam, quæ [segnities] est inania virtuti*. Nay, *Cicero* himself, but especially *Cæsar*, frequently repeat the Substantive; as, *In oppidum perfugisti, quo in oppido*: &c. You fled to a Town, in which Town, *Cic. Diem dicunt, quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant*, They appoint a Day, on which Day they should meet upon the Banks of the Rhosne, &c.

*NOTE, 2.* That when the Relative respects a whole Sentence, it is put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Joannes mortuus est, quod mihi summo dolori est*, *John* is dead, which is a great Grief to me.

*NOTE, 3.* That the Person of the Relative is always the same with that of its Antecedent; as, *Ego qui doceo*, I who teach. *Tu qui discis*, You who learn. *Lesio quæ docetur*, The Lesson which is taught.

*Præceptor* <sup>a</sup> *qui* <sup>b</sup> *docet.*

The Master who teacheth.

- 8 2. At si interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit ejus casus quem Verbum aut Nomen sequens, vel Præpositio præcedens regere solent; ut,

2. But if a Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be of that Case, which the Verb or Noun following, or the Preposition going before use to govern; as,

*Deus* <sup>b</sup> *quem* <sup>a</sup> *colimus.*

God whom we worship.

*Cujus* <sup>a</sup> *munere* *vivimus.*

By whose Gift we live.

<sup>b</sup> *Cui* *nullus* *est* <sup>a</sup> *similis.*

To whom there is none like.

<sup>a</sup> *A* <sup>b</sup> *quo* *facta* *sunt* *omnia.*

By whom all things were made.

### ANNO TATIO.

- 9 ¶ Duo vel plura Substantiva singularia Conjunctione [*&*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.] copulata, habent Adjectivum, Verbum vel Relativum plurale; ut,

Two or more Substantives singular coupled together with a Conjunction [*&*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.] have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative Plural; as,

<sup>a</sup> *Petrus* *&* <sup>aa</sup> *Joannes*

Peter and John who are learned.

<sup>b</sup> *qui* <sup>b</sup> *sunt* <sup>b</sup> *docti.*

REG.

Num. 9. NOTE, 1. That when the Substantives are of different Genders, the Adjective or Relative plural must agree with the Masculine rather than the Feminine or Nenter; as, *Pater & mater qui sunt mortui*, The Father and Mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the Substantives signify things without Life, the Adjective, or Relative plural must be put in the Nenter Gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria in oculis sita sunt*; Riches, Honour and Glory are set before your Eyes.

NOTE, 2. That when two or more Nominatives are of different Persons, the Verb plural must agree with the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third; as, *Si tu & Tullia valetis, ego & Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

NOTE, 3. That the Adjective or Verb frequently agree with the Substantive or Nominative that is nearest them, and are understood to the rest; as, *Et ego in culpa sum & tu*, Both I and you are in the Fault: Or, *Et ego & tu es in culpa*, *Nihil hic deest nisi carmina*, There is nothing here wanting but Charms; or, *Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt*. This Manner of Construction is most usual, when the different Words signify one and the same thing, or much to the same Purpose; as, *Mens, ratio & consilium in senibus est*, Understanding, Reason and Prudence is in old Men.

NOTE, 4. That Collective Nouns, because they are equivalent to a Plural Number, have sometimes the Adjective or Verb in the Plural Number; as, *Pars virgis cæsi*, a part of them were scourged. *Turba ruunt*, the Crowd rush.

REG. IV.

**U**NUM Substantivum concordat cum alio eandem rem significante in casu; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Cicero <sup>b</sup> Orator.  
<sup>a</sup> Urbs <sup>b</sup> Edimburgum.  
<sup>a</sup> Filius <sup>b</sup> delicia matris suæ (a).

RULE IV.

10

**O**NE Substantive agrees with another signifying the same thing in Case; as,  
 Cicero the Orator.  
 The City of Edinburgh.  
 A Son the Darling of the Mother.

II. De Regimine.

**R**EGIMEN est triplex.  
 1. Nominum.  
 2. Verborum.  
 3. Vocum Indeclinabilium.

Of Government.

**G**OVERNMENT is Threefold.  
 1. Of Nouns.  
 2. Of Verbs.  
 3. Of Words indeclinable.

I. REGIMEN Nominum.  
 § 1. Substantivorum.

REG. I.

**U**NUM Substantivum regit aliud rem diversam significantem in Genitivo; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Amor <sup>b</sup> Dei.  
<sup>a</sup> Lex <sup>b</sup> naturæ.

I. The Government of Nouns.  
 § 1. Of Substantives.

RULE I.

**O**NE Substantive governs another signifying a different Thing in the Genitive; as,  
 The Love of God.  
 The Law of Nature.

ANNOTATIONES.

\* 1. Si posterius Substantivum adjunctum habeat Ad-

1. If the last Substantive have an Adjective of Praise 12  
 jecti-

(a) To these four Concords some add a Fifth, viz. that of the *Responsive*, agreeing with its *Interrogative* in Case; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater.* Who gave you Money? My Father. *Quo cares? Liber.* What do you want? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule: For the *Responsive*, or the Word that answers the Question, does not depend upon the *Interrogative*, but upon the Verb, or some other Word joined with it; which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the Answer; thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater* [dedit mihi pecuniam.] *Quo cares? [Cares] libro.*

**Num. II. NOTE, 1.** That OF or 's is the ordinary Sign of the Genitive.  
**NOTE, 2.** That the Relative Pronouns, *ejus, illius, cujus, &c.* Englished, *His, her, its, their, thereof, whereof, whose*, have their Substantives generally understood; as, *Liber ejus* (supple *Homini, Familiæ, &c.*) His Book or her Book. *Libri eorum* (supple *hominum, familiarum, &c.*) Their Books.

jectivum laudis vel vituperii, in Genitivo vel Ablativo poni potest; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Vir <sup>b</sup> summæ <sup>b</sup> prudentia, vel <sup>b</sup> summâ <sup>b</sup> prudentiâ.

<sup>a</sup> Puer <sup>b</sup> probæ <sup>b</sup> indolis, vel <sup>b</sup> probâ <sup>b</sup> indole.

13 \* 2. Adjectivum in Neutro Genere absque Substantivo regit Genitivum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Multum <sup>b</sup> pecuniæ.

<sup>a</sup> Quid <sup>b</sup> rei.

or Dispraise joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative; as,

A Man of great Wisdom.

A Boy of a good Disposition.

2. An Adjective in the Neuter Gender without a Substantive governs the Genitive; as,

Much Money.

What is the Matter?

### § 2. Adjectivorum.

#### REG. I.

\* 14 **A**DJECTIVA verbalia, vel Affectionem animi significantia Genitivum postulant; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Avidus <sup>b</sup> gloriæ.

<sup>a</sup> Ignarus <sup>b</sup> fraudis.

<sup>a</sup> Memor <sup>b</sup> beneficiorum.

### § 2. Of Adjectives.

#### RULE I.

**V**ERBAL Adjectives or such as signify an Affection of the Mind require the Genitive; as,

Desirous of Glory.

Ignorant of Fraud.

Mindful of Favours.

REG.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*; *Quæ res?*

NOTE, 1. That these Adjectives which thus govern the Genitive, as if they were Substantives, are generally such as signify Quantity; as, *Multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum.*

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the Genitive, and upon that Account are by many thought real Substantives.

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. Adjectives of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambitiosus, avarus, studiosus, curiosus.*

2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præcius, præsagus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, consultus, &c.*

3. Of IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, radis, imperitus, nescius, inscius, incertus, dubius, anxius, sollicitus, immemor.*

4. Of GUILT; as, *consciens, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus.*

5. Verbals in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, terax, fugax, tenax, pernix:* And *Anans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, sitiens, negligens, &c.*

6. To which may be referred, *stimulus, munificus, parens, prodigus, profusus, securus.*

Num.

by relos

Abl. as,

de, e, e,

NOTE

Partitive

maximus

Gender w

feminarum

NOTE

Nouns, a

mus nostr

Num.

tive; as,

prius, com

NOTE,

rather the

propensu

NOTE,

either of t



REG. II.

\*PARTITIVA & partitivè posita, Comparativa, Superlativa, Interrogativa & quædam Numeralia Genitivo plurali gaudent; ut,

*Aliquis* <sup>b</sup> *Philosophorum.*

<sup>a</sup> *Senior* <sup>b</sup> *fratrum.*

<sup>a</sup> *Doctissimus* <sup>b</sup> *Romanorum.*

<sup>a</sup> *Quis* <sup>b</sup> *nostrum.*

<sup>a</sup> *Una* <sup>b</sup> *Musarum.*

<sup>a</sup> *Octavus* <sup>b</sup> *sapientum.*

REG. III.

ADJECTIVA significantia commodum vel incommodum, similitudinem vel dissimilitudinem, regunt Dativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Utilis* <sup>b</sup> *bello.*

<sup>a</sup> *Perniciosus* <sup>b</sup> *Reipublicæ.*

<sup>a</sup> *Similis* <sup>b</sup> *patri.*

RULE II.

ARTITIVES and Words plac'd partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives and some Numerals govern the Genitive plural; as, Some one of the Philosophers. The elder of the Brothers. The most learned of the Romans. Which of us? One of the Muses. The Eighth of the wise Men.

RULE III.

ADJECTIVES signifying Profit or Disprofit, Likeness or Unlikeness, govern the Dative; as,

Profitable for War.

Pernicious to the Common-

Like his Father. [wealth.

¶ Ver-

Num. 15. NOTE, 1. That 'tis easy to know when this Rule takes Place, by resolving the Genitive into Inter with the Accus. or *de, e, ex*, with the Abl. as, *Optimus Regum*, The best of Kings; i. e. *Optimus inter Reges*, or *de, e, ex Regibus*.

NOTE, 2. That when there are two Substantives of different Genders, the Partitive, &c. rather agrees with the first than the last; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus*, Plin. Otherwise it is of the same Gender with the Substantive it governs; as, *Pauca animalium. Unaquæque faminarum.*

NOTE, 3. That Partitives, &c. take the Genitive singular of Collective Nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in Gender; as, *Prestantissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic. *Nympharum sanguinis una*, Virg.

Num. 16. NOTE, 1. That some of these Adjectives govern also the Genitive; as, *Amicus, inimicus, socius, vicinus, par, aqualis, similis, dissimilis, proprius, communis*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives signifying Motion or Tendency to a thing choose rather the Accusative with AD, than the Dative, such as, *Proclivis, pronus, propensus, velox, celer, tardus, piger*, &c. as,

*Est piger ad pœnas Princeps, ad præmia velox*, Ovid.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives signifying Fitness, or the contrary, may have either of them; as, *Aptus, ineptus, bello*, or *ad bellum*.

- 17 <sup>c</sup> Verbalia in BILIS & DUS regunt Dativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Amandus* vel <sup>a</sup> *amabilis*  
<sup>b</sup> *alta*.

## R E G. IV.

- 18 \* **A** DJECTIVA dimensionem significantia regunt Accusativum mensuræ; ut,

*Columna sexaginta* <sup>b</sup> *pedes*  
<sup>a</sup> *alta*.

## R E G. V.

- 19 \* **C** OMPARATIVUS regit Ablativum, qui resolvitur per QUAM; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Dulcior* <sup>b</sup> *melle*.  
<sup>a</sup> *Præstantior* <sup>b</sup> *auro*.

## R E G. VI.

- 20 \* **D** IGNUS, *Indignus*, *Contentus*, *Præditus*, *Captus* & *Fretus*: item *Natus*, *Satus*, *Ortus*, *Editus*,

*Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the Dative; as,*

To be loved of all Men.

## R U L E IV.

**A** DJECTIVES signifying Dimension govern the Accusative of Measure; as,

A Pillar Sixty Foot high.

## R U L E V.

**T** H E Comparative Degree governs the Ablative, which is resolved by QUAM; as, Sweeter than Honey. Better than Gold.

## R U L E VI.

**T** H E S e Adjectives, *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Contentus*, *Præditus*, *Captus*, and *Fretus*: *Al-* so *Natus*, *Satus*, *Ortus*, *Editus*,

Num. 17. OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this Dative.

NOTE, That Participles of the Preter Tense, and Passive Verbs, also especially among the Poets, have frequently the Dative instead of the Ablative, with A or AB; as, *nullus eorum mihi visus est*, None of them was seen by me. *Non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any.

Num. 18. The Adjectives of DIMENSION are, *Altus*, high or deep; *crassus*, or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The Names of MEASURE are, *Digitus*, an Inch; *palmus*, an Handbreadth; *pes*, a Foot; *cubitus*, a Cubit; *ulna*, an Ell; *passus*, a Pace, &c.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs signifying Dimension likewise have the Accusative of Measure, as, *Patet tres ulnas*, It is three Ells large, *Virg*.

NOTE, 2. That sometimes the Word of Measure is put in the Ablative; as, *Fossa sex cubitis alta*, *duodecim lata*, *Liv. Venter ejus extat sesquipedem*, *Peri.* And sometimes but rarely in the Genit. as, *Nec longiores duodecim pedum*, *Plin*.

Num. 19. Let the following Examples be observed and imitated: *Multo melior*, Much better. *Nihilo pejor*, Nothing worse. *Major solito*, Greater than usual. *Quo diligentior es, eo doctior evadas*, The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto superbior, tanto vilior*, The prouder, the less worth. *Nihil Virgilio doctius*, There is none more learned than *Virgil*.

& similia, Ablativum petunt; and the like, require the Ablative; as,

<sup>a</sup> Dignus <sup>b</sup> honore.

<sup>a</sup> Præditus <sup>b</sup> virtute.

<sup>a</sup> Contentus <sup>b</sup> parvo.

<sup>a</sup> Captus <sup>b</sup> oculis.

<sup>a</sup> Fretus <sup>b</sup> viribus.

<sup>a</sup> Ortus <sup>b</sup> Regibus.

Worthy of Honour.

Endued with Virtue.

Content with little.

Blind.

Trusting to his Strength.

Descended of Kings.

REG. VII.

RULE VII.

\* ADJECTIVUM copiae aut inopiae regit Genitivum vel Ablativum;

AN ADJECTIVE of Plenty or Want governs the Genitive or Ablative; as,

<sup>a</sup> Plenus <sup>b</sup> iræ vel <sup>b</sup> irâ.

<sup>a</sup> Inops <sup>b</sup> rationis.

Full of Anger.

Void of Reason.

II. REGIMEN Verborum.

II. The Government of Verbs.

§ 1. Personalium.

§ 1. Of Personal Verbs.

REG. I.

RULE I.

\* SUM, quoties possessionem, proprietatem aut officium significat, regit Genitivum;

SUM, when it signifies Possession, Property or Duty, governs the Genitive; as,

<sup>a</sup> Est <sup>b</sup> Regis punire rebelles.

<sup>b</sup> Insipientis <sup>a</sup> est dicere non putaram.

<sup>b</sup> Militum <sup>a</sup> est suo duci parere.

It belongs to the King to punish Rebels.

It is the Property of a Fool to say I had not Thought.

It is the Duty of Soldiers to obey their General.

Excipiuntur hi Nominativi, Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum,

These Nominatives, Me, thy, his, our, &c.

Num. 21. NOTE, 1. That *Distentus*, *gravidus*, *refertus*; and *orbis*, *vacuus*, *viduus*, choose rather the Ablative: *Indignus*, *compos* and *impos* the Genitive.

NOTE, 2. That some comprehend *Opus* and *Usus*, when they signify Necessity, under this Rule; as, *Quid opus est verbis*? What need is there of Words? *Uoid. Nunc viribus usus*, Now there is need of Strength, *Virg.* But 'tis to be remarked that these are Substantive Nouns, the very same with *Opus*, *operis*, Work, and *Usus*, *usus*, Use; and have the Ablative after them, because of the Preposition *IN*, which is understood. Sometimes *Opus* hath the Nominative by Num. 3. as, *Dux mihi opus est*, We stand in need of a Leader. It is elegantly joined with the Participle Perfect; as, *Consulto, maturato, invento, &c. opus est*, We must advise, make haste, find out, do, &c.

*vestrum*; ut,

<sup>b</sup> *Tuum* <sup>a</sup> *est id procurare.*

## R E G. II.

24\* **M**ISEREOR, *miseresco & satago regunt Genitivum*; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Miserere* <sup>b</sup> *civium tuorum.*

<sup>a</sup> *Satagit* <sup>b</sup> *rerum suarum.*

## R E G. III.

25 **E**ST pro *habeo* regit *Dativum personæ*; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Est mihi* <sup>b</sup> *liber.*

<sup>a</sup> *Sunt* <sup>b</sup> *mihi libri.*

## R E G. IV.

26\* **S**UM pro *affero* regit *duos Dativos, unum personæ, alterum rei*; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Est mihi* <sup>b</sup> *voluptati.*

## R E G. V.

27 **V**ERBUM significans *commodum vel incommodum* regit *Dativum*; ut,

*Fortuna* <sup>a</sup> *savet* <sup>b</sup> *fortibus.*

<sup>b</sup> *Nemini* <sup>a</sup> *noceas.*

*vestrum*, are excepted; as,

It is your Duty to manage that.

## R U L E I I.

**M**ISEREOR, *miseresco and satago govern the Genitive*; as,

Take Pity on your Country-Men.

He hath his hands full at Home.

## R U L E I I I.

**E**ST taken for *habeo* [to have] govern the *Dative of a Person*; as,

I have a Book.

I have Books.

## R U L E I V.

**S**UM taken for *affero* [to bring] governs *two Datives, the one of a Person, and the other of a Thing*; as,

It is a Pleasure to me.

## R U L E V.

**A** Verb signifying *Advantage or Disadvantage* governs the *Dative*; as,

Fortune favours the brave.

Do hurt to no Man.

## R E G.

*Nam. 23.* To these last may be added *Possessive Nouns*, such as, *Regium humanum, bellinum*, and the like; as, *Humanum est errare*, It is incident to Man to err.

*NOTE*, That to all these are understood *Officium, opus, negotium*, or some other Word to be gathered from the Sentence; as, *Me Pompeii totum esse scis*, You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's Interest, *Cic. i. e. amicum, factorem*, or the like.

*Nam. 25.* This is more elegant than, *Habeo librum*, or *habeo libros*.

So *Desum* is used elegantly for *Careo*; as, *Desunt mihi libri*, for *Careo libris*, I want Books.

*Nam. 26.* *NOTE*, That other Verbs, such as, *Do, duco, verto, tribuo, habeo, relinquo*, &c. may have two *Datives*; as, *Hoc tibi laudi datur*, You are praised for this. *Ne mihi vitio veras*, Do not blame me.

To this may be referred such Expressions as these, *Est mihi nomen Joanni*, My Name is John; which is more elegant than, *Est mihi nomen Joannet, or Joannis*.

V  
ut,  
<sup>a</sup>  
<sup>a</sup> R  
\* I  
niscor  
culativ

*Nam.*  
to be ac  
in a mo

lo,  
nuo  
dul  
An  
rog  
3  
ma  
fam  
refr  
4  
iraj  
5  
6. Ver

benefacio,  
7. The

8. Ver  
in, inter,  
adhareo,

condono, e  
vigilo, incu  
bo. 7. Pe

cedo, submi  
NOTE,  
NOTE,

Local Moti  
invisor, ho  
with the P

*Nam. 28*  
Accusative  
vitam, Ga

a Metaphori



## REG. VI.

**V**ERBUM activè significans regit Accusativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Ama <sup>b</sup> Deum.

<sup>a</sup> Reverere <sup>b</sup> parentes.

\* Recordor, memini, remiscor & obliviscor regunt Accusativum vel Genitivum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Recordor <sup>b</sup> lectionis vel <sup>b</sup> lectionem.

<sup>a</sup> Obliviscor <sup>b</sup> injuriæ vel <sup>b</sup> injuriam.

## RULE VI.

**A** VERB signifying active-23 ly governs the Accusative; as,

Love God.

Reverence your Parents.

Recordor, memini, remiscor and obliviscor govern the Accusative or Genitive; as,

I remember my Lesson.

I forget an Injury.

I VER-

*Num. 27.* This is a very general Rule, and (when we signify a Thing to be acquired to any Person or Thing) almost common to all Verbs. But in a more particular Manner are comprehended under it;

1. To PROFIT or HURT; as, *Commodo, proficio, placeo, consulo, noceo, officio.* But *Lædo* and *offendo* govern the Accus.

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their contraries; as, *Faveo, annuo, arrideo, assentior, adstipulor, gratulor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulator, plando, blandior, lenocinor, patior, sindeo, supplico, &c.* Also *Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succorro, patrocinor, medeor*: Also *De-rogo, detraho, invideo, &c.* But *Favo* has the Accus.

3. To COMMAND, OBEY, or RESIST; as, *Impero, precipio, mando*: *Parco, servio, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, moremgero, morigeror, famulor*: *Pugno, repugno, certo, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, adversor, refragor, &c.* But *Fasces* governs the Accus.

4. TO THREATEN or be ANGRY with; as, *Minor, indignor, irascor, succenseo.*

5. TO TRUST; as, *Fido, confido, credo.*

6. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE and MALE; as, *Satisfacio, benefacio, benedico, malefacio, benedico.*

7. The Compounds of the Verb SUM; as, *Adsum, prosum, obsum.*

8. Verbs compounded with these 10 PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, and super*; as, 1. *Adsto, accumbo, acquiesco, assideo, adhareo, admoveo.* 2. *Antecello, anteeo, anteverto.* 3. *Consono, commisceo, condono, commorior.* 4. *Illudo, immorior, inhæreo, insideo, inbio, innitor, invigilo, incumbo.* 5. *Interpono, intervenio, intersero.* 6. *Obrepro, obirecto, occumbo.* 7. *Postpono, posthabeo.* 8. *Præco, præstat* for *excellit*; *præluco.* 9. *Succedo, submitto, subjiço.* 10. *Supersto, supervenio.*

NOTE, 1. That TO, the Sign of the Dative, is frequently understood.

NOTE, 2. That TO is not always a Sign of the Dative: For 1. Verbs of Local Motion; as, *Eo, venio, proficiscor*: And 2. These Verbs, *Provoco, voco, inuisor, hortor, specio, pertineo, attineo*, and such like, have the Accusative with the Preposition *ad*.

*Num. 28.* NOTE, That Nenter and Intransitive Verbs have sometimes an Accusative after them: 1. Of their own or the like Signification; as, *Vivere vitam, Gaudere gaudium, Sistere sanguinem, Olerè hircum.* 2. When taken in a Metaphorical Sense; as, *Ardebat Alexim*, i. e. *Vehementer amabat.*

VERBA Activa alium  
una cum Accusativo casum  
regentia.

- 30 \* 1. VERBA accusandi,  
damnandi & absolvendi, cum  
Accusativo personæ regunt  
etiam Genitivum criminis;  
ut,

<sup>a</sup> Arguit <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> furti.

<sup>b</sup> Meipsum <sup>bb</sup> inertia <sup>a</sup> con-  
demno.

<sup>b</sup> Illum <sup>bb</sup> homicidii <sup>a</sup> ab-  
solvunt.

- 31 2. Verba comparandi,  
dandi, narrandi & auferen-  
di, regunt Dativum cum Ac-  
cusativo; ut,

ACTIVE Verbs governing  
another Case together with  
the Accusative.

1. VERBS of Accusing,  
Condemning and Acquitting,  
with the Accusative of the  
Person, govern also the Genitive  
of the Crime; as,

He accuses me of Theft.

I condemn my self of La-  
ziness.

They acquit him of Man-  
slaughter.

2. VERBS of Comparing,  
Giving, Declaring and Taking  
away, govern the Dative with  
the Accusative; as,

<sup>a</sup> Comparo

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, arguo, aligo, aspringo, defero, incuso, insimulo, posulo, &c.*

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, *Damno, condemnno, convinco, &c.*

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, *Solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo, &c.*

NOTE, 1. That the Genitive may be changed into the Ablative, either with or without a Preposition; as, *Pargo te hac culpa*; or *de hac culpa*, I clear you of this Fault. *Eum de vi condemnnavit*, He found him guilty of a Riot, &c.

NOTE, 2. That the Genitive, properly speaking, is governed by some Ablative understood, such as *Crimine, pana, actione, causa*; as, *Accusare furti, i. e. crimine furti. Condemnare capitis, i. e. pana capitis.*

NOTE, 3. That *Crimine, pana, actione, capite, morte*, scarcely admit of a Preposition.

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong also Verbs of Prefer-  
ring or postponing.

2. To VERBS of GIVING belong Verbs of Receiving, promising, paying,  
sending, bringing.

3. To Verbs of DECLARING belong Verbs of Explaining, shewing, de-  
vying, &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING away are, *Aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, sur-  
ripio, detraho, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo, &c.*

NOTE, 1. That many of these Verbs govern the Dative by Num. 27.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the Dative with the  
Accusative, when together with the thing done is also signified the Person or  
thing to, or for whom, it is done; as, *Docce mihi filiam*, Teach me my Son.  
*Cura mihi hanc rem*, Take care of this Affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That *Comparo, confero, compono*, have frequently the Ablative  
with Cum.

<sup>a</sup> Comparo <sup>b</sup> Virgilium <sup>bb</sup> Homero.

I compare Virgil to Homer.

<sup>b</sup> Suum <sup>bb</sup> cuique <sup>a</sup> tribuito.

Give every Man his own.

<sup>a</sup> Narras <sup>b</sup> fabulam <sup>bb</sup> Jurdo.

You tell a Story to a deaf Man.

<sup>a</sup> Eripuit <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> morti.

He rescued me from Death.

\* 3. VERBA rogandi & docendi duos admittunt Accusativos, priorem personæ, posteriorem rei; ut,

3. VERBS of Asking and Teaching admit of two Accusatives, the first of a Person, and the second of a thing; as,

<sup>a</sup> Posce <sup>b</sup> Deum <sup>bb</sup> veniam.

Beg Pardon of God.

<sup>a</sup> Docuit <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> Grammaticam.

He taught me Grammar.

# AN NOT A T I O.

\* Quorum Activa duos Casus regunt, eorum Passiva posteriorem retinent; ut,

The Passives of such Active 33. Verbs as govern two Cases, do still retain the last of them; as,

<sup>a</sup> Accusor <sup>b</sup> furti.

I am accused of Theft.

Virgilius <sup>a</sup> comparatur <sup>b</sup> Homero.

Virgil is compared to Homer.

<sup>a</sup> Doceor <sup>b</sup> Grammaticam.

I am taught Grammar.

## R E G. VII.

\* PRETIUM rei a quovis Verbo in Ablativo regitur; ut,

## R U L E VII.

THE Price of a Thing is 34 governed in the Ablative by any Verb; as,

I 2

<sup>a</sup> Emi

Num. 32. NOTE, 1. That among the Verbs that govern two Accusatives, are also reckoned these following;

1. CELO; as, Cela hanc rem uxorem, Conceal this from your Wife, Plant. But we can say also, Celo te de hac re, and Celo tibi hanc rem.

2. Verbs of CLOATHING; as, Induit se calceos, He put on his Shoes. But these have more commonly the Ablative of the Thing without a Preposition; as, Vestit se purpura, He cloaths himself with Purple. Induo and Exuo have frequently the Person in the Dative, and the thing in the Accusative; as, Thoracem sibi induit, He put on his Breast-plate.

3. MONEO; as, id unum te moneo, I put you in Mind of this one Thing. But, unless it is some general Word, (as, Hoc, illud, id, &c.) Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio, have either the Genitive; as, Admoneo te officii, I put you in mind of your Duty: Or the Ablative with de; as, De hac re te sepius admonui, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE, 2. That Verbs of Asking often change the Accusative of the Person into an Ablative with the Preposition; as, Oro, exoro, peto, postulo hoc a te; I treat this of you: Some always; as, Contendo, quaero, scitor, sciscitor hoc a te: Finally some have the Accus. of the Person, and the Ablative of the thing with de; as, Interrogo, consulo, percontor te de hac re.

<sup>a</sup> *Emi librum* <sup>b</sup> *duobus assibus.*

<sup>a</sup> *Vendidit hic* <sup>b</sup> *auro patriam.*  
*Demosthenes* <sup>a</sup> *docuit* <sup>b</sup> *talento.*

35 \* *Excipiuntur hi Genitivi, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris; ut,*

<sup>b</sup> *Quanti* <sup>a</sup> *constitit?*  
*Assē &* <sup>b</sup> *pluris.*

36 \* *VERBA* æstimandi regunt hujusmodi Genitivos, *Magni, parvi, nihili, &c. ut,*

<sup>a</sup> *Æstimo te* <sup>b</sup> *magni.*

#### R E G. VIII.

37 \* *VERBA* copię & inopię plerumque Ablativum regunt; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Abundat* <sup>b</sup> *divitiis.*

<sup>a</sup> *Caret omni* <sup>b</sup> *culpâ.*

38 \* *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, regunt Ablativum; ut,*

<sup>a</sup> *Utitur* <sup>b</sup> *fraude.*

<sup>a</sup> *Abutitur* <sup>b</sup> *libris.*

I bought a Book for two Shillings. [for Gold.

This Man sold his Country  
Demosthenes taught for a Talent.

*These Genitives, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, are excepted; as,*

How much cost it?

A Shilling and more.

*VERBS of valuing govern such Genitives as these, Magni, parvi, nihili, &c. as,*

I value you much.

#### R U L E VIII.

*VERBS of Plenty and Scarceness for the most part govern the Ablative; as,*

He abounds in Riches.

He has no Fault.

*Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, govern the Ablative; as,*

He uses Deceit.

He abuses Books.

§ 2. Re-

*Num. 35. NOTE, That if the Substantive be expressed, they are put in the Ablative; as, Quanto pretio? Minore mercede.*

*Num. 36. 1. Verbs of valuing are, Æstimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, curo.*

2. The rest of these Genitives are, *Minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, flocci, pili, assis, teruncii, hujus*: Also *Æqui* and *boni* after *facio* and *consulo*.

*NOTE, 1. That we say also Æstimo magno, parvo, supple pretio.*

*NOTE, 2. That Alvarus excludes majoris, as wanting Authority. But there is an Example of it to be found in Phadrus, II. 5. 25.*

*Multo majoris alapa mecum veneunt.*

*Num. 37. Sometimes they have the Genitive; as, Eget avis, He wants Money, Horat. Implentur veteris Bacchi, They are filled with old Wine, Virg.*

*NOTE, That Verbs of Loading and Unloading, and the like, belong to this Rule; as, Navis oneratur mercibus, The Ship is loaded with Goods. Levabo te hoc onere, I will ease you of this Burden. Liberavit nos metu, He delivered us from Fear.*

*Num. 38. To these Verbs add Nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, communico,*



2. *Regionem Verborum Impersonalium.*

R E G. IX.

**V**ERBUM Impersonale regit Dativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Expedit* <sup>b</sup> *Reipublicæ.*

<sup>a</sup> *Licet* <sup>b</sup> *nemini peccare.*

\* EXCEP. 1. *Refert* & *Interest* Genitivum postulant; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Refert* <sup>b</sup> *patris.*

<sup>a</sup> *Interest* <sup>b</sup> *omnium.*

\* At *Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, ponuntur in Accusativo plurali, ut,

*Non* <sup>b</sup> *mea* <sup>a</sup> *refert.*

\* EXCEP. 2. *Hæc quinque; Miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet & piget* regunt Accusativum personæ, cum Genitivo rei; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Miseret* <sup>b</sup> *me* <sup>bb</sup> *tui.*

<sup>a</sup> *Pœnitet* <sup>b</sup> *me* <sup>bb</sup> *peccati.*

<sup>a</sup> *Tædet* <sup>b</sup> *me* <sup>bb</sup> *vitæ.*

\* EXCEP. 3. *Hæc quatuor, Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, regunt Accusativum personæ cum Infinitivo; ut,

§ 2. The Government of Impersonal Verbs.

R U L E IX.

**A**N Impersonal Verb governs the Dative; as,

It is profitable for the State.

No Man is allowed to sin.

EXCEP. 1. *Refert* and *Interest* require the Genitive;

as,

It concerns my Father.

It is the Interest of all.

But *Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the Accusative Plural; as,

I am not concerned.

EXCEP. 2. *These five, Miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, and piget*, govern the Accusative of a Person, with the Genitive of a Thing; as,

I pity you.

I repent of my Sin.

I am weary of my Life.

EXCEP. 3. *These four, Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, govern the Accusative of the Person with the Infinitive; as,

I 3

<sup>a</sup> *Delectat*

*munico, visito, bes, fido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, afficio, consto, prosequor, &c.*

NOTE, That *Potior* sometimes governs the Genitive; as, *Potiri hostium*, To get his Enemies into his Power. *Potiri rerum*, To have the chief Rule.

Num. 39. Such as these, *Accedit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, laetetur, liber, licet, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, præstat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit, &c.* Together with the Dative, they have commonly an Infinitive after them, which is supposed to supply the Place of a Nominative before them.

Num. 42. NOTE, That this Genitive is frequently turned into the Infinitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse; Tædet me vivere*; and so they fall in with the following Rule.

<sup>a</sup> Delectat <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> studere.  
Non <sup>a</sup> docet <sup>b</sup> te <sup>bb</sup> rixari.

§ 3. REGIMEN Infinitivi,  
Participiorum, Gerundio-  
rum & Supinorum.

REG. X.

44 **U**NUM Verbum regit  
aliud in Infinitivo; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Cupio <sup>b</sup> discere.

REG. XI.

45 **P**ARTICIPIA, Gerundia  
& Supina regunt Casum  
suorum verborum; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Amans <sup>b</sup> virtutem.  
<sup>a</sup> Carens <sup>b</sup> fraude.

1. GERUNDIA.

46 1. **G**ERUNDUM in  
DUM Nominati-  
vi Casus cum verbo [est]  
regit Dativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Vivendum est <sup>b</sup> mihi rectè.

<sup>a</sup> Moriendum est <sup>b</sup> omnibus.

47 2. Gerundium in DI re-  
gitur à Substantivis vel Ad-  
jectivis; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Tempus <sup>b</sup> legendi.

<sup>a</sup> Cupidus <sup>b</sup> discendi.

I delight to study. [scold.

It does not become you to

§ 3. The GOVERNMENT  
of the Infinitive, Participles,  
Gerunds and Supines.

RULE X.

**O**NE Verb governs another in  
the Infinitive; as,  
I desire to learn.

RULE XI.

**P**ARTICIPLES, Gerunds and  
Supines govern the Case of  
their own Verbs; as,  
Loving Virtue.  
Wanting Guile.

1. GERUNDS.

1. **T**HE GERUND in DUM  
of the Nominative Case  
with the Verb [est] governs the  
Dative; as,

I must live well.

All must die.

2. The Gerund in DI is go-  
verned by Substantives or Ad-  
jectives; as,

Time of Reading.

Desirous to learn.

3. Ge-

Num. 43. NOTE, That *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the *Subjunctive*  
Mood, UT being understood; as, *Oportet facias*, [You must do it] for *Opor-*  
*et te facere*.

*Attinet*, *Pertinet* and *Speculat*, when used *impersonally* (which rarely hap-  
pens) have the *Accusative* with *ad*, as was observed above, Page 85.

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by *Adjectives*; as, *Cupidus* and *cupiens*  
*discere*.

NOTE, That the Verb *Cepit* or *caperunt* is sometimes understood; as, *Om-*  
*nes mihi invidere*; supple *caperunt*, They all began to envy me.

Num. 46. This Dative is frequently understood; as, *Enndum est*, (supple  
*nobis*) We must go.

NOTE, That this *Gerund* always imports *Necessity*, and the *Dative* after it  
is the *Person* on whom the *Necessity* lies.

Num. 47. 1. The *Substantives* are such as these, *Amor*, *causa*, *gratia*, *fin-*  
*dium*, *tempus*, *occafio*, *ars*, *otium*, *voluntas*, *cupido*, &c.

2. The *Adjectives* are generally *Verbals* mentioned Num. 14.

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi Casus regitur ab Adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem significantibus ; ut,

*Charta<sup>a</sup> utilis<sup>b</sup> scribendo.*

4. Gerundium in DUM Accusativi casus regitur à Præpositionibus *ad* vel *inter* ; ut,

*Promptus<sup>a</sup> ad<sup>b</sup> audiendum.*

*Attentus<sup>a</sup> inter<sup>b</sup> docendum.*

5. Gerundium in DO Ablativi Casus regitur à Præpositionibus, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, vel *in* ; ut,

*Pœna<sup>a</sup> à<sup>b</sup> peccando absterret.*

\* Vel sine Præpositione, ut Ablativus Modi vel Causæ ; ut,

*Memoria<sup>a</sup> excolendo<sup>b</sup> auge-  
tur.*

*a* *Defessus sum<sup>b</sup> ambulando.*

6. Gerundia Accusativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in Participia in DUS, quæ cum suis Substantivis in Genere, Numero & Casu concordant ; ut,

*Petendum est pacem.*

*Tempus petendi pacem.*

3. The Gerund in DO of 48 the Dative Case is governed by Adjectives signifying Usefulness or Fitness ; as,

Paper useful for writing.

4. The Gerund in DUM of 49 the Accusative Case is governed by the Prepositions *ad* or *inter* ; as,

Ready to hear. [ing.

Attentive in Time of teach-

5. The Gerund in DO of 50 the Ablative Case is governed by the Prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in* ; as,

Punishment frightens from Sinning.

\* Or without a Preposition, 51 as the Ablative of Manner or Cause ; as,

The Memory is improved by exercising it.

I am wearied with walking.

6. Gerunds governing the 52 Accusative are elegantly turned into the Participles in DUS, which agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number and Case as,

*Petenda est pax.*

*Tempus petenda pacis.*

Ad

Num. 48. The Adjective of Fitness is often understood ; as, *Non est solvendo*, He is not able to pay ; [supple *aptus* or *par* ]

NOTE, That sometimes this Gerund is governed by a Verb as, *Epidicum querendo operam dabo*, I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus, *lent*.

Num. 49. NOTE, 1. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely, the Prepositions *ob* and *ante* ; as, *Ob absolvendum munus*. For finishing your Task, *Cic. Ante domandum*, Before they are tamed or broken, *Virg.* peaking of Horses.

NOTE, 2. That what was the Gerund in DUM of the 49th with the Verb *est*, *fuit*, &c. becomes the Accusative with *esse* ; as, *Ornibus moriendum esse novimus*, We know that all must die.

Ad petendum pacem.

A petendo pacem.

## S U P I N A.

- 53\* 1. Supinum in UM ponitur post verbum môtus; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Abiit <sup>b</sup> deambulatum.

- 54\* 2. Supinum in U ponitur post nomen Adjectivum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Facile <sup>b</sup> dictu.

Ad petendam pacem.

A petenda pace.

## S U P I N E S.

1. The Supine in UM is put after a Verb of Motion; as, He hath gone to walk.

2. The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun; as,

Easy to tell, or to be told.

§ 4. Con-

Num. 51. Add to these the Gerunds of Fungor, fruor and potior.

These Participles in DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.

NOTE, 1. That the Substantive must always be of the same Case that the Gerund was of.

NOTE, 2. That because of its noisy Sound the Gerund in di is seldom changed into the Genitive Plural; but either the Accusative is retained; as, Studio patres vestros videndi, rather than Patrum vestrorum videndorum, or it is turned into the Genitive Plural; without changing the Gerund; as, Patrum vestrorum videndi studio.

Num. 53. The Supine in UM is elegantly used with the Verb Eo, when we signify that one sets himself about the doing of a thing; as, In mea vita tu laudem is questum? Are you going to advance your Reputation at the Hazard of my Life? Ter. And this is the Reason why this Supine, with ire taken impersonally, supplies the Place of the Future of the Infin. Passive.

## Some general Remarks on the Construction of Participles, Gerunds and Supines

NOTE, 1. That Participles, Gerunds and Supines have a twofold Construction; one as they partake of the Nature of Verbs, by which they govern a certain Case after them; another as they partake of the Nature of Nouns, and consequently are subject to the same Rules with them; Thus,

1. A Participle is always an Adjective, agreeing with its Substantive, by Num. 1.

1. A Gerund is a Substantive, and construed as follows: (1.) That in dum of the Nominative by Num. 1. Of the Accus. by Num. 68. (2.) That in di by Num. 11. or 14. (3.) That in do of the Dat. by Num. 16. of the Ablat. by Num. 69, 71, or 55.

3. A Supine is also a Substantive, (1.) That in um, governed by ad understood by Num. 68. (2.) That in u governed by in understood, by Num. 71.

NOTE, 2. That the Present of the Infinitive Active, the first Supine and the Gerund in dum, with the Preposition ad, are thus distinguished: The Supine is used after Verbs of Motion; The Infinitive after any other Verbs; the Gerund in dum with ad after Adjective Nouns. But these last are frequently to be met with after Verbs of Motion; and Poets use also the Infinitive after Adjectives.

NOTE, 3. That the Present of the Infinitive Passive, and the last Supine are thus distinguished: the Supine hath always an Adjective before it; which the Infinitive hath not, unless among Poets:



§ 4. Constructio CIRCUMSTANTIARUM.

1. *Causa, Modus & Instrumentum.*

R E G. XII.

\* CAUSA, Modus, & Instrumentum ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,

- <sup>b</sup> *Palleo* <sup>b</sup> *metu.*  
<sup>a</sup> *Fecit suo* <sup>b</sup> *more.*  
<sup>a</sup> *Scribo* <sup>b</sup> *calamo.*

2. *Locus.*

R E G. XIII.

\* 1. NOMEN oppidi ponitur in Ge-

§ 4. The Construction of Circumstances. (a)

1. The Cause, Manner and Instrument.

R U L E XII.

THE Cause, Manner and Instrument are put in the Ablative; as,

- I am pale for fear.  
 He did it after his own way.  
 I write with a Pen.

2. Place.

R U L E XIII.

THE Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, when

nitivo,

(a) *Adjective Nouns*, but especially *Verbs* have frequently some CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Discourse; the most considerable whereof with respect to Construction are these Five. 1. The Cause or Reason why any Thing is done. 2. The Way or Manner how it is done. 3. The Instrument or Thing wherewith it is done. 4. The Place where. And 5. The Time when it is done.

*Num. 55. NOTE, 1.* That the CAUSE is known by the Question CUR, or QUARE? *Why? Wherefore? &c.* The MANNER by the Question QUOMODO? *How?* And the INSTRUMENT by the Question QUOCUM? *Wherewith?*

*NOTE, 2.* That the *Preposition* is frequently express'd with the Cause and Manner; as, *Pra gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culpam*, For a Fault. *Cum summo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecus*, With Disgrace. But the *Preposition* [CUM] is never added to the Instrument: For we cannot say, *Scribo cum calamo*; *Cum oculis vidi*.

*NOTE, 3.* But here we must carefully distinguish between the Instrument and what is called the *Ablativus Comitatus*, or *Ablative of Concomitancy*, i. e. signifying that something was in Company with another; for that the *Preposition* [CUM] is generally express'd; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio* He entered with a Sword, i. e. having a Sword with him, or about him.

*NOTE, 4.* That to Cause some refer the Matter of which anything is made; as, *Chelys are fabricatus*, A Shield made of Brass: But (except with the Poets) the *Preposition* is for the most part express'd.

*NOTE, 5.* That to Manner some refer the *Adjunct*, i. e. something joined to another thing; as, *Terra amana floribus*, a Land pleas'd with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, a Hill white with Snow.

*NOTE, 6.* That to Instrument some refer *Conficio* *dolo inedia*, &c. *Prosequor odio*, *amore*, &c. *Afficio te honore*, *contumelia*, &c. *Accesso verbis asperis*, &c.

nitivo, cum Quæstio fit per UBI;  
ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Vixit* <sup>b</sup> *Romæ.*

<sup>a</sup> *Mortuus est* <sup>b</sup> *Londini.*

57 \* EXCEP. Si vero fit ter-  
tiæ Declinationis, aut Pluralis  
Numeri, in Ablativo effertur;  
ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Habitat* <sup>b</sup> *Carthagine.*

<sup>a</sup> *Studuit* <sup>b</sup> *Parisiis.*

58 \* 2. Cum quæstio fit per  
QUO nomen oppidi in Accu-  
sativo regitur; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Venit* <sup>b</sup> *Edimburgum.*

<sup>a</sup> *Profectus est* <sup>b</sup> *Athenas.*

59 \* 3. Si quæretur per UN-  
DE vel QUA, nomen op-  
pidi ponitur in Ablativo;  
ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Discessit* <sup>b</sup> *Aberdonia.*

<sup>b</sup> *Laodicea iter* <sup>a</sup> *faciebat.*

60 \* 3. *Domus & Rus* eodem  
modo quo oppidorum nomina  
construuntur; ut,

*Manet domi,* He stays at Home. *Domum revertitur,* He re-  
turns home. *Domo accersitus sum,* I am called from home.  
*Vivit ruri* or *ruri.* *Abiit rus.* *Rediit rure.*

61. 5. Nominibus regionum,  
provinciarum, & aliorum lo-  
corum non dictis Præposi-  
tio ferè additur; ut,

UBI *Natus in Scotia, in Fisa, in urbe, &c.*

QUO *Abiit in Scotiam, in Fisam, in [vel ad] urbem, &c.*

UNDE *Rediit è Scotia, è Fisa, ex urbe, &c.*

QUA? *Transiit per Scotiam, per Fisam, per urbem, &c.*

ANNO-

when the Question is made by  
UBI, [Where]; as,

He lived at Rome.

He died at London.

EXCEP. But if it is of the  
third Declension, or of the Plu-  
ral Number, it is express in the  
Ablative; as,

He dwells at Carthage.

He studied at Paris.

2. When the Question is  
made by QUO, [Whither] the  
Name of a Town is governed in  
the Accusative; as,

He came to Edinburgh.

He went to Athens.

3. If the Question is made  
by UNDE [Whence] or QUA,  
[by or through what Place] the  
Name of a Town is put in the  
Ablative; as,

He went from Aberdeen.

He went through Laodicea.

4. *Domus and Rus* are con-  
strued the same Way as Names  
of Towns; as,

Nam. 56. &c. Note. That the Preposition is frequently added to Names  
of Towns, (especially when the Question is Quo? Unde? or Qua?) and some-  
times omitted to Names of Countries, Provinces, &c.

ANNOTATIO.

\* Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accusativo, interdum & in Ablativo; ut,

Glasgwa <sup>a</sup> distat Edimburgo triginta <sup>b</sup> millia passuum.

<sup>a</sup> Iter vel <sup>b</sup> itinere unius diei.

13. Tempus.

R E G. XIV.

\* 1. **T**EMPUS ponitur in Ablativo cum quæstio sit per QUANDO; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Venit <sup>b</sup> hora tertia.

\* 2. Cum quæstio sit per QUAMDIU, tempus ponitur in Accusativo vel Ablativo, sed sæpius Accusativo; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Mansit paucos <sup>b</sup> dies.

Sex <sup>a</sup> mensibus <sup>b</sup> absuit.

The Distance of one Place from another is put in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,

Glasgow is thirty Miles distant from Edinburgh.

One Day's Journey.

3. Time.

R U L E XIV.

1. **T**IME is put in the Ablative, when the Question is made by QUANDO, [When]; as,

He came at three-a-Clock.

2. When the Question is made by QUAMDIU, [How long] Time, is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but oftener in the Accusative; as,

He stayed a few Days.

He was away six Months.

De

NOTE, 2. That *Humi*, *Militia* and *Belli* are also used in the Genitive when the Question is made by *Ubi*? as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militiaque una fuimus*, We were together both at Home and Abroad. or in Peace and War, *Ter. Belli domique agitabatur*, Was managed both in Peace and War, *Solesti*.

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive in *urbe* is understood, and therefore we cannot say, *Natus est Roma urbis abilis*, but *urbe nobili*.

\* These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus exprest.

The Name of	{ IN or AT	} is put	{ Gen <sup>l</sup> or Abl. †
a Town	{ TO or UNTO		
after	{ FROM or THROUGH		

† i. e. When it is of the third Declens. or of the Plur. Number. But when AT signifies about or near a Place, we make use of the Preposition *ad*; as, *Bel-lum quod ad Troiam gesserat*, Virg.

Nam. 63 and 64. These two Rules may be thus exprest.

1. Nouns that denote a precise TERM of Time, are put in the Ablative.

2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of Time are put in the Accusative or Ablative.

De Ablativo absoluto.

REG. XV.

\* **S**UBSTANTIVUM cum Participio, quorum Casus à nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in Ablativo absoluto; ut,  
*a Sole b oriente fugiunt tenebræ.*

*Opere b peracto ludemus.*

### III. Constructio Vocum Indeclinabilium.

#### 1. Adverbiorum.

\* 1. **A**DVERBIA quædam temporis,

Of the Ablative Absolute.

RULE XV.

**A** SUBSTANTIVE with a b c Participle whose Case depends upon no other Word are put in the Ablative Absolute; as,

The Sun rising [or, while the Sun riseth] Darkness flees away.

Our Work being finished [or when our Work is finished] we will play.

### III. The Construction of Words Indeclinable.

#### 1. Of Adverbs.

1. **S**OME Adverbs of Time, Place and loci

Num. 65. NOTE, 1. This *Ablative* is called ABSOLUTE, or *Independent*, because it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the *Substantive* (which is principally to be regarded) hath a Word before, that should govern it, or a *Verb* coming after, to which it should be a *Nominative*, then the Rule does not take Place.

NOTE, 2. That *Having*, *Being*, or a Word ending in *ing*, are the ordinary Signs of this *Ablative*.

NOTE, 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true *Substantive*) when a *Participle perfect* is *Englished* by *HAVING*, we are carefully to advert whether it is *Passive* or *Deponent*. If it is *Passive*, we are to change it into *BEING*, its true *English*. If it is *Deponent*, there needs no change, for *HAVING* is the proper *English* of it. The Use of this Note will appear by the following Examp.

James having said these things

departe.

*Jacobus hac locutus abiit. Dep.*

James, these things being said,

departed.

*Jacobus his dictis abiit. Pass.*

Having promised a great Reward

*Pollicitus magnam mercedem. Dep.*

A great reward being promised. *Magnâ mercedo promissâ. Pass.*

NOTE, 4. That when there is no *Participle* express in Latin, *existens* [being] is understood; *Me puero*, I being a Boy. *Saturno rege*, Saturn being King. *Civitate nona liberâ*, The State not being yet free.

NOTE, 5. That the *Participle* may be resolved into *Daum*, *cum*, *quando*, *si*, *postquam*, &c. [While, being, when, if, after] with the *Verb*; either in *English* or *Latin*.



loci & quantitatis regunt Genitivum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Pridie illius* <sup>b</sup> *diei.*

<sup>a</sup> *Ubique* <sup>b</sup> *gentium.*

<sup>a</sup> *Satis est* <sup>b</sup> *verborum.*

\* 2. Quædam Adverbia derivata regunt Casum primitivum; ut,

<sup>b</sup> *Omnium* <sup>a</sup> *elegantissime loquitur.*

*Vivere* <sup>a</sup> *convenienter* <sup>b</sup> *naturæ.*

2. *Præpositionum.*

1. **P** RÆPOSITIONES *Ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. Accusativum regunt; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Ad* <sup>b</sup> *patrem.*

2. Præpositiones *A*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. regunt Ablativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *A* <sup>b</sup> *patre.*

3. Præpositiones *In*, *sub*, *super* & *subter*, regunt Accusativum cum motus ad locum significatur; ut,

*Eo* <sup>a</sup> *in* <sup>b</sup> *scholam.*

<sup>a</sup> *Sub* <sup>b</sup> *mœnia tendit*, Virg.

*Incidit* <sup>a</sup> *super* <sup>b</sup> *agmina*, Id.

*Ducit* <sup>a</sup> *subter* <sup>b</sup> *fastigia tecti*, Id.

¶ At si motus vel quies in loco significetur, *In* & *sub* regunt Ablativum; *Super* & *subter* vel Accusativum vel Ablativum; ut,

*Sedeo* vel *discurro* <sup>a</sup> *in* <sup>b</sup> *schola.*

*Recubo* vel *ambulo* <sup>a</sup> *sub* <sup>b</sup> *umbra.*

*Sedens* <sup>a</sup> *super* <sup>b</sup> *arma*, Virg.

*Fronde* <sup>a</sup> *super* <sup>b</sup> *viridi*, Id.

*Quantity govern the Genitive; as,*

The Day before that Day.

Every where.

There's enough of Words.

2. *Some Derivative Ad-verbs govern the Case of their Primitives; as,*

He speaks the most elegantly of all. [ture.

To live agreeably to Na-

2. *Of Prepositions.*

1. **T** H E *Prepositions* *Ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the Accusative; as, To the Father.

2. *The Prepositions*, *A*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the Ablative; as,

From the Father.

3. *The Prepositions* *In*, *sub*, *super* and *subter*, govern the Accusative when Motion to a Place is signified; as,

I go into the School.

He goes under the Walls.

It fell upon the Troops.

He brings [him] under the Roof of the House.

*But if Motion or Rest in a Place be signified* *In* and *Sub* govern the Ablative; *Super* and *Subter* either the Accusative or Ablative; as,

I sit or run up and down in the School.

I lie or wall under the Shadow.

Sitting above the Arms.

Upon the green Grass.

De Ablativo absoluto.

REG. XV.

\* **S**UBSTANTIVUM cum Participio, quorum Casus à nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in Ablativo absoluto; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Sole <sup>b</sup> oriente fugiunt tenebræ.

Opere <sup>b</sup> peracto ludemus.

### III. Constructio Vocum Indeclinabilium.

#### 1. Adverbiorum.

\* 1. **A**DVERBIA quædam temporis,

Of the Ablative Absolute.

RULE XV.

**A** SUBSTANTIVE with <sup>a</sup>65 Participle whose Case depends upon no other Word are put in the Ablative Absolute; as,

The Sun rising [or, while the Sun riseth] Darkness flees away.

Our Work being finished [or when our Work is finished] we will play.

### III. The Construction of Words Indeclinable.

#### 1. Of adverbs.

1. **S**OME Adverbs of Time, Place and loci

Num. 65. NOTE, 1. This *Ablative* is called ABSOLUTE, or Independent, because it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the *Substantive* (which is principally to be regarded) hath a Word before, that should govern it, or a *Verb* coming after, to which it should be a *Nominative*, then the Rule does not take Place.

NOTE, 2. That *Having*, *Being*, or a Word ending in *ing*, are the ordinary Signs of this *Ablative*.

NOTE, 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true *Substantive*) when a *Participle perfect* is *Englished* by *HAVING*, we are carefully to advert whether it is *Passive* or *Deponent*. If it is *Passive*, we are to change it into *BEING*, its true *English*. If it is *Deponent*, there needs no change, for *HAVING* is the proper *English* of it. The Use of this Note will appear by the following Example.

James having said these things

departe,

James, these things being said,

departed.

Jacobus hac locutus abiit. Dep.

Jacobus his dictis abiit. Pass.

Having promised a great Reward } Pollicitus magnam mercedem. Dep.  
A great reward being promised. } Magna mercede promissa. Pass.

NOTE, 4. That when there is no *Participle* express in Latin, *existens* [being] is understood; Me puero, I being a Boy. Saturno rege, Saturn being King. Civitate nona libera, The State not being yet free.

NOTE, 5. That the *participle* may be resolved into *Dum*, *cum*, *quando*, *si*, *postquam*, &c. [While, when, if, after] with the *Verb*; either in *English* or *Latin*.

loci & quantitatis regunt Genitivum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Pridie illius <sup>b</sup> diei.

<sup>a</sup> Ubique <sup>b</sup> gentium.

<sup>a</sup> Satis est <sup>b</sup> verborum.

\* 2. Quædam Adverbia derivata regunt Casum primitivum; ut,

<sup>b</sup> Omnium <sup>a</sup> elegantissime loquitur.

Vivere <sup>a</sup> convenienter <sup>b</sup> nature.

2. Præpositionum.

1. **P** RÆPOSITIONES *Ad*, apud, ante, &c. Accusativum regunt; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Ad <sup>b</sup> patrem.

2. Præpositiones *A*, ab, abs, &c. regunt Ablativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> A <sup>b</sup> patre.

3. Præpositiones *In*, sub, super & subter, regunt Accusativum cum motus ad locum significatur; ut,

Eo <sup>a</sup> in <sup>b</sup> scholam.

<sup>a</sup> Sub <sup>b</sup> mœnia tendit, Virg.

Incidit <sup>a</sup> super <sup>b</sup> agmina, Id.

Ducit <sup>a</sup> subter <sup>b</sup> fastigia tecti, Id.

¶ At si motus vel quies in loco significetur, *In* & *sub* regunt Ablativum; *Super* & *subter* vel Accusativum vel Ablativum; ut,

Sedeo vel discuro <sup>a</sup> in <sup>b</sup> schola.

Recubo vel ambulo <sup>a</sup> sub <sup>b</sup> umbra.

Sedens <sup>a</sup> super <sup>b</sup> arma, Virg.

Fronde <sup>a</sup> super <sup>b</sup> viridi, Id.

Quantity govern the Genitive; as,

The Day before that Day.

Every where.

There's enough of Words.

2. Some Derivative Ad-verbs govern the Case of their Primitives; as,

He speaks the most elegantly of all. [ture.

To live agreeably to Na-

2. Of Prepositions.

1. **T** HE Prepositions *Ad*, 68 apud, ante, &c. govern the Accusative; as,

To the Father.

2. The Prepositions, *A*, ab, 69 abs, &c. govern the Ablative; as,

From the Father.

3. The Prepositions *In*, sub, 70 super and subter, govern the Accusative when Motion to a Place is signified; as,

I go into the School.

He goes under the Walls.

It fell upon the Troops.

He brings [him] under the Roof of the House.

But if Motion or Rest in a Place be signified *In* and *Sub* govern the Ablative; *Super* and *Subter* either the Accusative or Ablative; as,

I sit or run up and down in the School.

I lie or wall under the Shadow.

Sitting above the Arms.

Upon the green Grass.

*Venæ* <sup>a</sup> *subter* <sup>b</sup> *cutem dispersæ*,  
Plin.

<sup>a</sup> *Subter* <sup>b</sup> *littore*, Catul.

4. ¶ *Præpositione* in compositione eundem sæpe Casum regit quem extra; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Adeamus* <sup>b</sup> *scholam*.

<sup>a</sup> *Exeamus* <sup>b</sup> *scholâ*.

The Veins dispersed under the Skin.

Beneath the Shoar.

4. *A Preposition oft times* <sup>72</sup> governs the same Case in Composition that it does without it; as,

Let us go to the School.

Let us go out of the School.

3. Inter-

¶ The Prepositions with the Cases they govern are contained in these Verses:

1. *Hæ* quantum adsciscunt Casum sibi *Præposituræ*;  
*Ad*, *penes*, *adversum*, *cis*, *citra*, *adversus*, & *extra*,  
*Ultra*, *post*, *præter*, *juxta*, *per*, *pone*, *secundum*,  
*Erga*, *apud*, *ante*, *secus*, *trans*, *supra*, *propter*, & *intra*,  
*Quis* addas *contra*, *circum*, *circa*, *inter*, *ob*, *infra*.
2. *Hæ* sextum poscunt; *A*, *cum*, *tenuis*, *abs*, *ab*, & *absque*,  
*Atque* *palam*, *pro*, *præ*, *clam*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *sine*, *coram*.
3. *Sub*, *super*, *in*, *subter*, quantum sextumque requirunt.

NOTE, 1. That *Versus* and *Usque* are put after their Cases; as, *Italiam versus*, Towards Italy. *Oceanum usque*, As far as the Ocean. But (as we have already observed, Page 67.) these are properly *Adverbs*, the *Preposition* *AD* being understood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenuis* is also put after its Case; as, *Mento tenuis*, Up to the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenuis* governs the *Genitive Plural*, 1. When the Word wants the *Singular*; as, *Cumænum tenuis*, As far as [the Town] *Cumæ*. 2. When we speak of Things of which we have naturally but two; as, *Cutem tenuis*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Consonants*, *Ab* and *Ex* before *Vowels* and *Consonants*; *Abs* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE, 5. That *Subter* hath very rarely the *Ablat.* and only among Poets.

NOTE, 6. That in English *IN* is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative*, *IN-TO* of the *Accusative*.

NOTE, 7. If for *Erga*, *contra*, *per*, *supra*, *ad*, &c. governs the *Accus.* as, *Amor in patriam*. *Quid ego in te commisi?* *Crescit in dies singulos*. *Imperium Regum in proprios reges*, Horat. *Pisces in cœnam emti*. But *IN* for *inter* governs the *Ablative*, as, *In amicis habere*, Sallust.

*SUB* for *circa* governs the *Accusat.* as, *Sub cœnam*.

*SUPER* for *Ultra*, *præter* and *inter* governs the *Accusat.* as, *Super Garamantas*, Virg. *Super patriam suam*, Sallust. *In sermone super cœnam nato*, Suet. For *de* it governs the *Ablat.* as, *Super hac re nimis*, Cic.

Numb. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes Place when the *Preposition* may be dissolved from the Verb, and put before the Case by itself; as, *A loquor patrem*, i.e. *Loquor a patrem*. And even then the *Preposition* is frequently repeated; as, *Exire finibus suis*, Cæs.



3. Interjectionum.

\* 1. **INTERJECTIONES** O, heu & prob, regunt Vocativum, interdum Accusativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> O formose <sup>b</sup> puer.

<sup>a</sup> Heu <sup>b</sup> me miserum!

\* 2. Hei & Væ regunt Dativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Hei <sup>b</sup> mihi!

<sup>a</sup> Væ <sup>b</sup> vobis.

4. Conjunctionum.

\* 1. **CONJUNCTIONES** Et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, & quædam aliæ, connectunt similes Casus & Modos; ut,

Honora <sup>b</sup> patrem <sup>a</sup> & <sup>b</sup> matrem.

Nec <sup>b</sup> scribit, <sup>a</sup> nec <sup>b</sup> legit.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam & dummodo Subjunctivo Modo fere semper adhærent; ut,

Lego <sup>a</sup> ut <sup>b</sup> discam.

<sup>a</sup> Utinam <sup>b</sup> sapires.

3. Of Interjections.

1. **THE** Interjections O, 73 Heu and Proh, govern the Vocative, and sometimes the Accusative; as,

O fair Boy.

Ah Wretch that I am!

2. Hei and Væ govern the Dative; as,

Ah me!

Wo to you.

4. Of Conjunctions.

1. **THE** Conjunctions Et, 75 ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, and some others, couple like Cases and Moods; as,

Honour your Father and Mother.

He neither writes nor reads.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam and dummodo are for the most part joined with the Subjunctive Mood; as,

I read that I may learn.

I wish you were wise.

K 2 SYN-

Numb. 75. To these add Quam, nisi, praterquam, an, and Adverbs of Likeness. The Reason of this Construction is because the Words so coupled depend all upon the same Word, which is express to one of them, and understood to the other.

Numb. 76. To these add all Indefinite Words, that is, Interrogatives, whether Nouns Pronouns, Adverbs or Conjunctions, when taken in a doubtful or indefinite Sense; such as, Quis, uter, quantus, &c. Ubi, mo, unde, &c. Cur, quare, quomobrem, num, an, anne, &c. (See Page 65 and 70.) They generally become Indefinites, when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, such as, Scio, nescio, video, intelligo, dubito, and the like; as, Ubi est frater tuus? Nescio ubi sit. An venturus est? Dubito an venturus sit.

NE the Adverb of Forbidding requires the Imperative or Subjunctive; as, Ne time, or Ne timeas. See Page 47.

Dum, quam, quod, si, fin, ni, nisi, etsi, etiamsi, p[ro]usquam, simulac, siquidem, quandoquidem, &c. are joined sometimes with the Indicative, and sometimes with the Subjunctive.

## SYNTAXEOS Synopsis,

Sive

*Genuinæ & maximè necessariæ Constructionis Regulæ ad quas ceteræ omnes reducuntur.*

## AXIOMATA.

I. OMNIS Oratio constat ex Nomine & Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus habet suum verbum expressum vel suppressum.

III. Omne Verbum finitum habet suum Nominativum expressum vel suppressum.

IV. Omne Adjectivum habet suum Substantivum expressum vel suppressum.

## Sex Casuum Constructio.

I. OMNE Verbum finitum expressum vel suppressum concordat cum Nominativo expresso vel suppresso in Numero & Persona; ut,

*Puer legit.*

[Homines] *Aiunt.*

*Romani* [cœperunt] *affinare.*

## A Summary of SYNTAX,

Or

The true and most necessary Rules of Construction to which all the rest are reduced.

## First PRINCIPLES.

I. EVERY Speech [or Sentence] consists of a Noun and a Verb.

II. Every Nominative hath its own Verb express or understood.

III. Every Finite Verb hath its own Nominative express or understood.

IV. Every Adjective hath its own Substantive express or understood.

## The Construction of the Six Cases.

I. EVERY Verb of the Finite Mood express or understood agrees with its Nominative express or understood in Number and Person; as,

The Boy reads.

They say.

The Romans made haste.

II. Omnis

II. Omnis Genitivus regitur à Substantivo expressio vel suppressio; ut,

*Liber fratris.*

*Est [officiam] patris.*

III. Dativus Acquisitionis [i.e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel adimitur] cuivis Nomini aut Verbo expressio vel suppressio jungitur; ut,

*Dedi Petro.*

*Cui dedisti? [Dedi] Petro.*

*Utilis bello.*

*Non est [aptus] solvendo.*

IV. Omnis Accusativus regitur à Verbo Activo vel † Præpositione expressis vel suppressis; ut,

*Amo Deum;*

*Et [amo] parentes.*

*Ad Patrem.*

*Abiit [ad] Londinum.*

¶ Aut Infinitivo præponitur expressus vel suppressus; ut,

*Dicit se scribere.*

*Licet mihi [me] esse bonum.*

T. Omnis Vocativus absolute ponitur, additâ nonnunquam Interjectione O; ut,

*O Dave.*

*Heus Syre.*

VI. Omnis Ablativus regitur à † Præpositione expressa vel suppressa; ut,

*A pæro.*

*Exultat [præ] gaudio.*

II. Every Genitive is governed by a Substantive express or understood; as

The Book of my Brother.

It is the Duty of a Father.

III. The Dative of Acquisition [i.e. to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken] is joined to any Noun or Verb express or understood; as, I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it? To Profitable for War. [Peter.

He is not able to pay.

IV. Every Accusative is governed by an Active Verb, or a † Preposition express or understood; as,

I love God;

and my Parents.

To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

¶ Or is put before the Infinitive express or understood; as,

He says that he is writing.

I may be good.

V. Every Vocative is placed absolutely, the Interjection O being sometimes added; as,

O Davus.

Come hither Syrus.

VI. Every Ablative is governed by a † Preposition express or understood; as,

From a Child.

He leaps for joy.

APPEN-

## APPENDIX.

I. OMNE Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo expresso vel suppresso, in Genere, Numero & Casu; ut,

*Bonus vir.*

*Triste [negotium.]*

II. Substantiva significantia eandem rem conveniunt in Casu; ut,

*Dominus Deus.*

III. Omnis infinitivus regitur a Verbo vel Nomine expressis vel suppressis; ut,

*Cupio discere.*

*Dignus amari.*

*Populus [cœpit] mirari.*

I. EVERY Adjective agrees with a Substantive expressed or understood, in Gender, Number and Case; as,

A good Man.

A sad thing.

II. Substantives signifying the same thing agree in Case; as,

The Lord God.

III. Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or a Noun expressed or understood; as,

I desire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondred.

## EXPLANATION.

ALL Construction is either TRUE or APPARENT, or (as Grammarians express it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE Construction is founded upon the Essential Properties of Words, and is almost the same in all Languages. APPARENT Construction entirely depends upon Custom, which either for Elegance or Dispatch leaves out a great many Words otherwise necessary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The first is comprised in these few Fundamental Rules, and more fully branched out in the Larger Syntax. The other is also interspersed through the Larger Syntax, but distinguished from that which is True by an Asterisk.

The Cases mentioned in the Rules of the Larger Syntax immediately discover the Rule of this Summary to which they respectively belong; these that are True without any Ellipsis; these that are Figurative by having their Ellipsis supplied is follows, as they are numbered in the Margent.

To RULE II. are reduced Numb. 13, supple *negotium*. Numb. 14, and 47, sup. *de causa*, *gratia*, or *in re*, *negotio*. Numb. 15, sup. *e numero*. Numb. 21, sup. *de negotio*. Numb. 22, and 23, sup. *officium*, *negotium*, &c. Numb. 24, sup. 1. *Sat*, taken from the Verb. 2. *de causa*, &c. Numb. 29, sup. *memoriam*, *notitiam*, *verba*, &c. Numb. 30, sup. *de crimine*, *pœna*, &c. Numb. 35, and 36, sup. *prope*, or *pretio ariis*. Numb. 40, sup. *inter negotia*, and *re* [fert] *se ad negotia*. Numb. 42, sup. *res*, *negotium*, &c. Numb. 56, sup. *in arbe*. Numb. 60, *Dom*, sup. *in adibus*. Numb. 66, These Adverbs seem to be taken for Substantive Nouns.

To RULE III. is reduced Numb. 73, sup. *Malum est*; or these Interjections are used as Substantives.



## Part III. Chap. II. Of Resolution: 103

To RULE IV. belong Numb. 18, 53, and 62, sup. *ad*. Numb. 33, sup. *quod ad*. Numb. 41, i. e. *Eſt inter mea negotia*; *Reſert* [or *res fert*] *ſe ad mea negotia*, &c. Numb. 58, sup. *ad* or *in*. Numb. 64, sup. *per*. Numb. 73, sup. *ſentio*, *ſageo*. &c.

To RULE VI. belong Numb. 12, sup. *e*, *ex*, or *cum*. Numb. 19, sup. *præ*. Numb. 20, sup. *de*, *e*, *ex*, *cum*. &c. Numb. 21, sup. *a*, *ab*, &c.

Numb. 34, sup. *pro*. Numb. 37, 38, sup. *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*. Numb. 51, and 55, sup. *præ*, *cum*, *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*, &c. Numb. 54, sup. *in* or *de*. Numb. 57, sup. *in*. Numb. 59, sup. *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*. Numb. 62, sup. *in*. Numb. 64, sup. *in* or *pro*. Numb. 65, sup. *ſub*, *cum*, *a*, *ab*.

NOTE, 1. That under *Verbs* muſt alſo be comprehended *Participles*, *Gerunds* and *Supines*, becauſe the general Signification of *Verbs* is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That, as a Conſequence of this, a learned Grammarian ingeniouſly ſuppoſes that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb*, and that when they ſeem to be governed by a *Noun*, the *Participle Exiſtens* is underſtood; as, *Utilis [exiſtens] bello*. *Pollio præſidium [exiſtens] reis*. *Dignus [exiſtens] amari*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no part of a Sentence, but the Caſe by which we excite one to hear or execute what we ſay. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative*, as frequently happens, the *Nominative TU* or *VOS* is underſtood; and that even theſe Words be already expreſt in the *Vocative*; as, *Tu Jacobe lege*, i. e. *O tu Jacobe, tu lege*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Vocative* is ſufficient to it ſelf, and does not neceſſarily require the *Interjection O*. See *Voffius, Lib. VII. Cap. 69.* and *Sandius, Lib. IV. ac Ellipſi Verb. Audio & Narro.*

## CHAP. II.

### Of Expoſition or Reſolution.

**E**XPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a Sentence, and placing all the parts of it, whether expreſt or underſtood, in their proper Order, that the true Senſe and Meaning of it may appear.

1. A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound*.

1. A SIMPLE Sentence is that which hath one *Finite Verb* in it.

2. A COMPOUND Sentence is that which hath two or more ſuch Verbs in it, joined together by ſome *Comples*.

Theſe COUPLES are of four Sorts, 1. The *Relative QUI*. 2. Some *Comparative* Words, ſuch as, *Tantus, quantus*; *Talis, qualis*; *Tam, quam*; &c. 3. *Indefinite Words*, [ſee Page 70, and 99.] 4. *Conjunctions*.

In a Simple Sentence there are two things to be conſidered, 1. Its *Essential*, 2. Its *Accidental* Parts.

1. The *Essential* Parts of a Sentence are a *Nominative* and a *Verb*.

2. The *Accidental* Parts are of four Kinds. 1. ſuch as excite *Attention*, as the *Vocative* and *exciting Particles*, as, *O, en, ecce, heus*, &c. 2. ſuch ſerve to introduce a Sentence, or to ſhew its *Dependence* upon what was ſaid before, as, *Jam, hæcenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea*, &c. 3. ſuch limit the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative* or *Verb*, and theſe are *Subſtantive Nouns*. 4. ſuch as qualify and explain them. *viz. Ad*

*Adjectives, Adverbs, and Prepositions* with their Cases. Sometimes a Part of a *Compound Sentence* supplies the Place of these two last Kind of Words.

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. *NATURAL Order* is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another in the same Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

*ARTIFICIAL Order* is when Words are so ranged as to render them most agreeable to the Ear; but so as the Sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A Sentence may be resolved from the *Artificial* into the *Natural Order* by the following Rules.

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting and Introductory Words*, where they are found.

2. The *NOMINATIVE*.

3. Words *limiting or explaining it*, i. e. Word agreeing with or governed by it, or by one another successively (till you come to the *Verb*), where they are found.

4. The *VERB*.

3. Words *limiting or explaining it, &c.* where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are understood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it severally as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

## E X A M P L E.

*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis preceptisque latere.* Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewel then, my [Son] Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take Delight in such Writings and Instructions.

This compound Sentence is resolved into these five simple Sentences.

1. *Igitur, mi* [fili] *Cicero, [tu] vale,* 2. *& [tu] persuade tibi te esse quidem carissimum* [filium] *mihi;* 3. *sed [tu] persuade tibi te* fore cariorem [fili mihi in] *multo* [negotio] 4. *si [tu] latere talibus monumentis,* 5. *et [si tu] latere talibus* preceptis.

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative Words* stand always first in a Sentence, unless a *Preposition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative Words* stand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unless it is a *Preposition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive Mood* is used in compound Sentences.

NOTE, 5. That the Parts of a compound Sentence are separated from one another by these Marks called *INTERPUNCTIONS*. 1. These that are smaller, named *Clauses*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. These that are greater, named *Members*, by this Mark (:) called a *Colon*, or this (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no Connection with the rest, it is inclosed within what we call a *Parenthesis*, marked thus ( ).

But when the Sentence, whether *Simple* or *Compound*, is fully ended, if it is a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is closed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a *Question* is asked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. If *Wonder*, or some other sudden *Passion* is signified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration*.

F I N I S.



